

The Colloquial Series

Series adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Afrikaans			Korean
Albanian			Latvian
Amharic			Lithuanian
Arabic (Le	evantine)		Malay
Arabic of	Egypt		Mongolian
Arabic of t	the Gulf and Saudi		Norwegian
Arabia			Panjabi
Basque			Persian
Bulgarian			Polish
* Cambodia	n	*	Portuguese
* Cantonese			Portuguese of Brazil
* Chinese			Romanian
Croatian a	nd Serbian	*	Russian
Czech			Scottish Gaelic
Danish			Slovak
Dutch			Slovene
Estonian			Somali
Finnish		*	Spanish
French			Spanish of Latin America
German			Swedish
Gujarati		*	Tamil
Greek		*	Thai
Hindi			Turkish
Hungarian			Urdu
Icelandic			Ukrainian
Indonesian	(Vietnamese
Italian			Welsh
Japanese			

Accompanying cassette(s) (* and CDs) are available for all the above titles. They can be ordered through your bookseller or send payment with order to Taylor & Francis/Routledge Ltd, ITPS, Cheriton House, North Way, Andover, Hants SP10 5BE, UK, or to Routledge Inc., 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001, USA.

COLLOQUIAL CD-ROMs

Multimedia Language Courses

Available in: Chinese, French, Portuguese and Spanish

Portuguese of Brazil

The Complete Course for Beginners

Esmenia Simões Osborne, João Sampaio and Barbara McIntyre



London and New York

First published 1997 by Routledge 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

Reprinted with corrections 1999 Reprinted 2000, 2002

Second edition first published 2002

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

© 1997, 2002 Esmenia Simões Osborne, João Sampaio, Barbara McIntyre The publisher has made every effort to trace copyright holders and would be glad to hear from any who have not been traced.

Typeset in Times by Florence Production Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon Illustrations by Matthew Crabbe
Printed and bound in England by
Biddles Limited, Guildford and King's Lynn

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data A catalog record for this book has been requested

ISBN 0-415-27679-9 (book) ISBN 0-415-27680-2 (cassettes) ISBN 0-415-28090-7 (CD) ISBN 0-415-27681-0 (pack)

Contents

	roduction	1
Αç	guide to pronunciation	3
1	Oi, tudo bem?	
	Hi, is everything OK?	7
2	Gosto de viajar	
	I like to travel	27
3	Parabéns!	
	Congratulations!	46
4	Desculpe!	
	Excuse me!	64
5	Posso ver?	
	Can I see?	81
6	Uma passagem de ida para Ouro Prêto	
	A single to Ouro Prêto	99
7	Não me sinto bem	
	I don't feel well	115
8	Não desligue	
	Hold on	134
9	O fim de semana	
	The weekend	150
10	Moro num apartamento	
	I live in a flat	170
11	Encontramo-nos mais tarde?	
	Shall we meet later?	186
12	Exmo. Senhor	
	Dear Sir	202

13 A Internet	
The Internet	218
Reference grammar	230
Key to exercises	247
Portuguese–English glossary	287
English-Portuguese glossary	302
Topic index	312
Grammatical index	314

Introduction

This book has been written to provide a beginners' course in Brazilian Portuguese suitable for self-study, using a practical and modern method. It consists of thirteen lessons containing dialogues, reading comprehensions and exercises covering essential grammar points and vocabulary. Any differences of grammar and vocabulary found in European Portuguese are highlighted and the language used is kept simple but idiomatic. A simplified pronunciation guide is included and recordings accompany the book, which allow you to listen to, and practise speaking, the Portuguese language.

The purpose of the course is to provide the student with a sound base of conversational Brazilian Portuguese in a relatively short period of time, sufficient to cope in general holiday/business situations. The dialogues and reading texts present grammar and vocabulary in a systematic manner and each lesson is built around everyday situations such as visiting the bank or buying a drink in a café.

We recommend studying a little at a time but often – say about an hour a day – but, of course, individual preferences vary. First answer the exercises orally, then write them down before checking in the key at the end of the book. Certain exercises have no key as the answers are usually self-evident. As each lesson is completed, revise with the help of the concluding 'How much can you remember?' section. If you find that you can't remember a particular grammar point or structure, go back and revise the relevant part of the lesson before moving on to a new one. All the grammatical points raised are summarized in the compact reference grammar section at the back of the book.

Start a notebook for vocabulary, perhaps under different headings such as 'colours' or 'food', for ease of learning and reference. Two glossaries (Portuguese–English and English–Portuguese) are provided. Keep all your exercises in a second notebook. For help

2

on pronunciation, consult the guide at the beginning of the book and listen carefully to the recordings which accompany the course. These are, of course, optional but are of great assistance in improving listening and speaking skills.

The authors would like to thank Maria Cristina Sousa and Carolina Simões Ribeiro. Special thanks to our partners Bill Osborne, Patsy Sampaio and Angus McIntyre for their encouragement.

A guide to Brazilian pronunciation

1 Vowels

- **a** If this is stressed, it is pronounced like the *a* in father but shorter: **fado** (pronounced fahdoo). If it is unstressed, it is pronounced like the *e* in rather: **mesa** (pronounced meza) ('table').
- a This is pronounced like the un in lung but nasalized: maçã ('apple').
- **e** 1 If this is stressed, it sounds either like the *e* in sell: **perto** (pronounced *perhtoo*) ('near') or like the *ey* in prey: **saber** (pronounced *sabeyr*) ('to know'). If it is unstressed, it sounds like the *ey* in prey: **bebida** (pronounced *beybeeda*) ('drink').
 - 2 At the end of a word **e** is pronounced like *ee* in *peep*: **cidade** (pronounced *seedahjee*) ('city'). In European Portuguese, however, the final **e** is not pronounced: **tarde** (pronounced *tard*) ('late/afternoon').
 - 3 The word for 'and', e, is pronounced as ee in sweep.
- i This is pronounced like the *e* in *evil*: **decidir** ('to decide'). When it is unstressed, it sounds like the *i* in *pin*: **idade** (pronounced *idahjee*) ('age').
- o If this is stressed or has an acute accent ('), it is pronounced like the o in opera, but closed before a nasal consonant: fome ('hunger'). When it is unstressed, it is pronounced like the oo in book: gato ('cat'), the commonest sound is similar to oh, like o in police: motorista ('driver').
- **u** This is usually pronounced like the *oo* in roof: **rua** ('street'). In the following four groups, however, it is not pronounced: **gue**, **gui**, **que** and **qui**.

2 Consonants

b This is pronounced as in bank: **obrigado** (pronounced *obree-gahdoo*) ('thank you').

c 1 This can be: soft, like the *s* in slow before an **e** or **i**: **cidade** (pronounced *seedahjee*) ('city'). If the **c** has a cedilla (**c**), it is always soft;

2 hard, as in card before an o or a: cá (pronounced cah) ('here').

d This is pronounced as in sad: **tenda** (pronounced *tendah*) ('tent'). It is pronounced like the *ji* in *ji*nx, before and *i* or final unstressed **e**: **dificuldade** (pronounced *djeefeeculdahjee*) ('difficulty').

f This is pronounced as in *f*air: **fechado** (pronounced *feshahdoo*) ('closed').

g 1 This is soft before an **e** or **i**, as in the English s in pleasure: **gente** (pronounced *zhentjee*) ('people');

2 hard before an **o**, **u** or **a**, as in get: **gato** (pronounced gahtoo) ('cat').

h This is never pronounced: homem (pronounced omaing) ('man').

1 When it follows a **c** it is pronounced like *sh* in *sh*ore: **chuva** (pronounced *shoova*) ('rain').

2 When it follows an **n**, it is pronounced like *ni* in o*ni*on: **banho** (pronounced *banyoo*) ('bath').

3 When it follows an **l**, it is pronounced like *lli* in million: **mulher** (pronounced *moolyair*) ('woman').

j This is pronounced like the *s* in measure: **jovem** (pronounced *zhovaing*) ('young').

1 This is pronounced as in look: **mala** ('suitcase'). At the end of a word it sounds fainter, like ow in cow: **natal** (Christmas).

m Except at the end of a word, this is pronounced as in machine: **maio** (pronounced myyoo) ('May'). At the end of a word it sounds like ng in sung: **bem** (pronounced beying) ('good').

n This is pronounced as in no: **nada** (pronounced naahdah) ('nothing').

p This is pronounced as in put: **pato** (pronounced pahtoo) ('duck').

q This is pronounced as in quick and is always followed by **u**: **quarenta** (pronounced kwarentah) ('forty').

r This is pronounced as in rain: caro (pronounced cahroo) ('dear'). Double r has a harder, more rolling sound: carro (pronounced cahroo) ('car'). It is pronounced like the h in hat at the beginning of a word: rir (pronounced heer) ('to laugh').

s 1 At the beginning of a word this is pronounced like the s in sun: socorro! (pronounced sockorroo) ('help!').

2 Between two vowels it is pronounced like the *s* in present: **casa** (pronounced *caahzah*) ('house').

3 At the end of a word it is pronounced like s in books: **livros** (pronounced *leevroos*) ('books').

4 S at the end of a word is pronounced like sh in push: **livros** (*leevroosh*) only in Rio de Janeiro.

t This is pronounced as in teacher: **tudo** (pronounced toodooh) ('everything'). Followed by **i** this is pronounced as *ch* in *ch*eers: **vestido** (pronounced *veestcheedoo*) ('dress').

v This is pronounced as in video: **videocassete** (pronounced *veed-jeeocassetjee*) ('video-cassette player').

x 1 At the beginning of a word this is pronounced like the sh in shone: xale (pronounced shal) ('shawl').

2 In the prefix **ex** when followed by a vowel, it is pronounced like the z in zoo: **executivo** (pronounced *ezekootcheevoo*) ('executive').

3 Within a word and between two vowels, it can be pronounced either like the *sh* in *sh*one: **roxo** (pronounced *rawshoo*) ('purple') or like the *cks* in ra*cks*: **tóxico** (pronounced *tokseekoo*) ('toxic').

4 When it is followed by **ce** or **ci**, it is not pronounced: **excêntrico** (pronounced *esentreecoo*) ('eccentric').

z 1 At the beginning and in the middle of a word, this is pronounced like the z in zoo: **zanga** (pronounced *zangah*) ('anger'); **dizer** (pronounced *djeezair*) ('to say').

2 At the end of a word it is pronounced like the final English s: **luz** (pronounced *loos*) ('light'). In Rio de Janeiro it is pronounced like the s in measure: **luz** (pronounced *loozh*).

Diphthongs

ãe This sounds like an in lang: mãe ('mother').

ão This is pronounced like the *own* in fr*own* but nasalized: **limão** ('lemon').

õe This is pronounced like the *on* in song but nasalized: **lições** ('lessons').

ou This is pronounced like the ow in crow: comprou ('you bought').

ei This is pronounced like the ay in pray: dei ('I gave').

eu This is pronounced *ayooh* (the first part rhymes with *hay*): **eu** ('I').

ai This is pronounced like the ie in pie: pai ('father').

6

Stress

This normally falls on the penultimate syllable – **mesa** ('table'), **janela** ('window') – except when:

- words end in l, r or z: pantanal ('swampland'), libertar ('to free'), feliz ('happy');
- 2 words end in i, im, um (and plural): comi ('I ate'), jardin ('garden'), nenhum ('no one'), alguns ('some');
- 3 there is an accent, indicating where the stress should fall: **fácil** ('easy'), **inglês** ('English').

Spoken Portuguese tends to run words together: Lia o livro ('He was reading the book') sounds like: lee-er-oo-lee-vroo.

Accents

The English names of accents are as follows:

acute (é) grave (à) tilde (ã) circumflex (ê).

- (â), (ê), (ô). Note that: 1 the **(â)** has the same sound as **(ã)**: **ângulo** ('angle'), **câmbio** ('exchange')
 - 2 the **(ê)** in: **inglês** ('English'), **bêbado** ('drunk') is pronounced as the *ey* in they.
 - 3 the **(ô)** in: **avô** ('grandfather'), **alô** ('hello'), **ôvo** ('egg') are pronounced like the *o* in hello.

1 Oi, tudo bem?

Hi, is everything OK?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- · greetings, introductions, farewells
- · ordering something to eat and drink
- using the present indicative tense of ser (to be)
- nationalities
- · subject pronouns
- · the definite and indefinite articles

Dialogue 1 Boa noite, como vai?

A crowd has gathered in the foyer of the Cinema Ipiranga in São Paulo to see the film **Os Três Mosqueteiros** (The Three Musketeers). Some of the crowd greet each other

ALICE: Boa noite, como vai?

Antônio: Boa noite, vou bem obrigado, e você?

ALICE: Bem, obrigada.1

Luisa: Com licença, como se chama? Isabel: Chamo-me Isabel, e você? Luisa: Chamo-me Luisa, muito prazer.

JORGE: Olá² colega!

José: Olá, Jorge, você está bom?

Jorge: Estou ótimo!³

CARLOS: Oi, Alice, tudo bem?
ALICE: Oi, Carlos, como vai?

Carlos: Muito bem, obrigado.

1 You say obrigado if you are male and obrigada if you are female.

2 This is the European Portuguese equivalent of Oi!

3 This is spelt óptimo in Portugal. Throughout this book we shall use the abbreviations (Br) for Brazilian spellings and equivalents and (Pt) for European Portuguese.

ALICE: Good evening, how is it going?

Antônio: Good evening, I'm fine thanks, and you?

ALICE: I'm well, thank you.

Luisa: Excuse me, what's your name?
Isabel: My name is Isabel, what's yours?

Luisa: My name is Luisa, pleased to meet you.

JORGE: Hi there, mate!

José: Hi, Jorge, how are you?

JORGE: Great!

CARLOS: Hi, Alice, everything OK? ALICE: Hi Carlos, how's it going?

CARLOS: Very well, thanks.

Exercise 1

If you have the recordings, listen again to the dialogues. Each time you hear the words or phrases listed in the chart below, tick them off. (If you don't have the recordings, re-read the dialogues, then cover the English and try writing the English translations, and vice versa.)

boa noite	você está bom?	como se chama?	tudo bem?	chamo -me	vou bem obrigado /a

Exercise 2

Translate the following into English then back into Portuguese. (Use the dialogues on pages 7–8 as a guide.)

A: Com licença, como se chama?

в: Chamo-me Jorge, e você, como se chama?

A: Chamo-me Luisa, muito prazer.

A: Boa noite, como vai?

в: Vou bem obrigado, e você?

A: Bem, obrigada.

Greetings

Depending on what time of day it is, you say:

Bom dia Good morning/Hello!

(during the morning until lunch time)

Boa tarde Good afternoon/Good evening/Hello!

(during the afternoon until dusk)

Boa noite Good evening/Good night/Hello!

(from nightfall until daylight)

These greetings can also be used as farewells:

Bom dia! Good morning! i.e. Goodbye!

(when taking leave)

When used as farewells, **bom dia**, **boa tarde** and **boa noite** are more informal than **adeus** which means 'goodbye'.

In Portuguese, either **boa tarde** or **boa noite** can be used to express the English 'good evening'. Essentially, although it may be fairly late in the evening – say after 7.00 p.m. – if an element of daylight still lingers, **boa tarde** is used. So, if it is 6.45 p.m. and dusk is falling but some light still remains:

Boa tarde! Good evening!

If it is 10.15 p.m., dusk has already fallen and the streetlights are on:

Boa noite! Good evening!

Dialogue 2 Vou bem, obrigado

What responses would you give to the following questions? If you have the recordings, use the pause button after each question to give yourself time to think of a reply. If you don't have the recordings, cover up the responses given by B and imagine how you might answer the questions

1

- A: Boa noite, como vai?
- в: Vou bem, obrigado.

2

- A: Olá Paula! Você está boa?4
- в: Estou bem, obrigada.

3

- A: Boa tarde, chamo-me Isabel, e você, como se chama?
- в: Boa tarde, chamo-me . . .

1

- A: Good evening, how is it going?
- в: I'm fine, thanks.

2

- A: Hi there Paula! How are you?
- B: Fine, thanks.

3

- A: Good afternoon, my name is Isabel, what's yours?
- B: Good afternoon, my name is ...

Pronunciation ...

Portuguese is a language which abounds in nasal sounds. If you have the recordings, listen to the following words:

fim	end	bem	well, fine	opinião	opinion
com	with	ontem	yesterday	mão	hand
homem	man	sim	yes	pão	bread
assim	thus	bom	good	televisão	television

Rules for pronunciation

1 The letter -m at the end of a Portuguese word sounds like -ng in English. For example:

falam is pronounced fahlang
bem is pronounced beying
sim is pronounced seeng
bom is pronounced bong
atum is pronounced atoong
In each case the final -g is not pronounced.

2 The letters -ão at the end of a Portuguese word (the accent is called a 'tilde') sound like 'Ow!' in English with the sound being produced simultaneously from the mouth and the nose. For example:

```
não is pronounced now pão is pronounced pow
```

Subject pronouns

We need to use four abbreviations in the following list and elsewhere in this book. They are: (m), which means 'masculine'; (f), which means 'feminine'; (s), which means 'singular'; and (pl), which means 'plural'.

eu	I
tu ⁵	you $(ms + fs)$
você	you $(ms + fs)$
o senhor	you (ms)
a senhora	you (fs)
ele	he, it

⁴ Está(s) boa? (How are you?) is the form of question asked of a female person and Está(s) bom? is the form asked of a male person.

ela	she, it
nós	we
vocês	you (mpl + fpl)
os senhores	you (mpl)
as senhoras	you (fpl)
eles	they (mpl)
elas	they (fpl)

⁵ This form for 'you' is most widely used in Portugal. It is also used in the south of Brazil, in Rio Grande do Sul.

Subject pronouns are often omitted in Portuguese, as the verb ending gives information about who is being referred to. For example:

Somos de Londres We are from London

Vós ('you' (pl)) is another way of expressing **vocês** or **os senhores/as senhoras**. It is still used in some parts of northern Portugal but largely it is found in prayers, speeches and classical literature.

One of the most noticeable differences between English and Portuguese is the variety of ways of expressing 'you', which can be translated as **você** (formal + informal), **tu** (informal), or **o senhor/a senhora** (formal), as well as their plural forms. For the time being, use **você** for 'you'.

The verb ser

One of the most frequently used verbs in Portuguese (as in English) is the irregular verb **ser** ('to be'). The present indicative tense of **ser** is as follows:

eu	sou	I am
tu	és	you are (ms + fs)
você	é	you are (ms + fs)
o senhor	é	you are (ms)
a senhora	é	you are (fs)
ele	é	he is, it is
ela	é	she is, it is
nós	somos	we are
vocês	são	you are (mpl + fpl)

os senhores	são	you are (mpl)
as senhoras	são	you are (fpl)
eles	são	they are (mpl)
elas	são	they are (fpl)

Exercise 3

Now match the correct subject pronoun to its form of the verb **ser**. The first has been done for you.

	ele	nós	vocês	tu	eu	elas	você
é	1						1
são							
és						-1	
sou							
somos							

Regular and irregular verbs

As in English, verbs can be either regular or irregular. An irregular verb is one which does not follow the normal pattern of stem + endings. The term 'present indicative' is the equivalent of the simple present in English and signifies a mood of certainty and fact. For example:

Ela é muito rica	She is very rich
O ônibus parte amanhã	The bus leaves tomorrow

Uses of the present indicative tense

1 To express facts:

Gosto de viajar I like travelling 2 A normal occurrence:

O banco fecha às 3 horas

The bank closes at 3 p.m.

3 Something happening at some future date which has an aura of intent about it:

Vou às compras mais tarde

I'll go shopping later

4 Something which has been going on and still is:

Estuda português há anos

He has been studying Portuguese for years (and is still doing so)

Dialogue 3 Sou brasileiro

Listen to the next four mini-dialogues where people of various nationalities are chatting about where they are from

1

o: Bom dia. Sou do Brasil. Sou brasileiro.6 De onde você é?

A: Olá! Sou da França. Sou francesa.6

2

- o: Bom dia. Chamo-me Fernanda. Sou brasileira. Como se chama?
- A: Chamo-me Stig. Sou da Holanda. Muito prazer.

3

Q: Olá! Tudo bem? Sou de Angola. Você também é de Angola?

A: Bom dia. Como vai? Não, não sou de Angola. Sou de Moçambique. Sou moçambicano.

4

- Q: Olá! Chamo-me Cristina. Qual é a sua nacionalidade?
- A: Muito prazer. Chamo-me Tracey. A minha nacionalidade é britânica.

1

- o: Good morning. I'm from Brazil. I'm Brazilian. Where are you from?
- A: Hi! I'm from France. I'm French.

2

- Q: Good morning. My name is Fernanda. I'm Brazilian. What's your name?
- A: I'm Stig. I'm from Holland. I'm pleased to meet you.

3

- Q: Hi! Is everything OK? I'm from Angola. Are you from Angola too?
- A: Good morning. How's it going? No, I'm not from Angola. I'm from Mozambique. I'm Mozambican.

4

- Q: Hi! My name's Cristina. What nationality are you?
- A: Pleased to meet you. My name is Tracey. My nationality is British.

Negatives

To make a sentence negative, put **não** ('no/not') before the verb:

Não sou inglês Não, não sou do Brasil I'm not English

No, I'm not from Brazil

Exercise 4

Now imagine you are in the group. How would you say: 'Hi! How are you? I'm fine, thanks. My name is ... What's your name? Are you from France? Oh, you're from England! I'm from Holland. Pleased to meet you!' You should find all the necessary expressions in the material covered so far.

⁶ Nationalities do not require a capital letter.

Forming feminine adjectives

In the dialogues about nationalities, the endings used were not always the same. This is because they change according to whether a male or female person is speaking or is being addressed:

Sou inglês

I'm English (male person speaking)

Sou inglesa

I'm English (female person speaking)

Você é angolana?

Are you Angolan? (asked of a female person)

As you can see from the above examples, to form the feminine of a nationality ending in -ês, the circumflex accent (^) is dropped and an -a is added. In the case of an adjective ending in -o, the -o is dropped and replaced with an -a. (Some nationalities do not conform to this rule but they need not concern us at this stage.)

Exercise 5a

Now match up the correct Portuguese phrase with its English equivalent in the following examples.

Sou brasileira
Sou português
Ele é angolano
Você é inglesa?

Are you English? (f)
I am Dutch (m)
She is Scottish
I am Portuguese (m)

Ela é escocesa I am Brazilian (f) Sou holandês He is Angolan

Introducing someone

Apresento-lhe a Joana

I'd like you to meet/This is Joana

Apresento-lhes . . .

I'd like you to meet ... (when you are introducing someone to more than one person)

Exercise 5b

Now try introducing the following people using the information given below each figure. Say in Portuguese: 'I'd like you to meet (name). He/she is from (country). He/she is (nationality).'



Tom England English



Pelé Brazil Brazilian



Gabriella Italy Italian



Hans Germany German

Vocabulary

ItáliaItalyitaliano/aItalianBrasilBrazilbrasileiro/aBrazilianAlemanhaGermanyalemão/alemãGerman

Exercise 6

Can you give the following in Portuguese? Wherever 'you' occurs, for the moment use the **você** form. Answers are in the key at the end of the book.

1	Are you English? (f)
2	I am Scottish (m)
3	He is Portuguese
4	Is she Brazilian?
5	You are Angolan (f)

Now cover up the English and translate the Portuguese into English.

Sou de, sou do, etc.

You may have noticed in Dialogue 3 that you cannot always say simply **sou** *de* ('I'm from'). Certain countries need the Portuguese word for 'the', which will either be **o** (m) or **a** (f). This then joins with **de** to produce the following:

Sou da (de + a) Holanda
Você é do (de + o) Brasil?

I'm from Holland
Are you from Brazil?

Some countries are plural:

os Estados Unidos the United States
Sou dos Estados Unidos I'm from the United States

 $de + os \rightarrow dos$

There is no real pattern as to why some countries require the definite article or why some are considered masculine while others are feminine. Just note them as they arise.

'Yes' and 'no'

Instead of replying with a bald 'yes' (sim) or 'no' (não), in Portuguese you repeat the verb:

Você é japonês? Sou, sim

Are you Japanese?

Yes

The gender of nouns

All Portuguese nouns are either masculine or feminine, even if you are referring to an inanimate object, 'it'.

Como é o computador? Wh

What's the computer like?

(Ele) é muito útil

It's very useful (lit.: 'he')

Nouns ending in -o, -im, -om and -um are generally masculine. Those ending in -a, -ã, -gem, -dade, -ice, -ez, -ção and -são are generally feminine, although there are exceptions.

The definite article

English does not have the problem of distinguishing between the gender of words. In Portuguese, the word for 'the' changes according to what is being referred to and every noun is either masculine or feminine.

For words in the singular you have a choice of either:

o (masculine words)

(pronounced oo)

a (feminine words)

(pronounced er)

o livro (m) the book

a casa (f) the house

and for words in the plural:

os (masculine words)

(pronounced oosh)

as (feminine words)

(pronounced ersh)

os livros (mpl) the books

as casas (fpl) the houses

The indefinite article

Again, this changes according to whether a noun is masculine or feminine:

um (masculine words)(pronounced oom)uma (feminine words)(pronounced oomah)

Examples

um jornal (m) a newspaper

uma revista (f) a magazine

Unlike in English, these articles have a plural form translated as 'some' or not translated at all:

uns (masculine words)
umas (feminine words)

(pronounced *oons*) (pronounced *oomas*)

Examples

uns óculos (some) spectacles umas canetas (some) pens

Exercise 7

Match up the following words with their correct article, definite or indefinite, in the box below.

1	celular ⁷ (ms)	the mobile phone
2	mulher (fs)	the woman
3	bolachas (fpl)	(some) biscuits
4	relógios (mpl)	the watches
5	sorvetes (mpl)	(some) ice creams
6	colinas (fpl)	the hills

\ 1 /		

os a uns as umas o

Forming the plural

(a) Nouns ending in a vowel (but not ão) add s

singular

plural

o gato the cat a cidade the city

os gatos the cats as cidades the cities

(b) Nouns ending in r or z add es

o sabor the flavour a voz the voice

os sabores as vozes

the flavours

(c) Nouns ending in m become ns

o homem the man

os homens the men

(d) Nouns already ending in s add es if the stress is on the last syllable:

o país th

the country

os países

the countries

o lápis the pencil

os lápis

the pencils

In the second example, the spelling of the noun is unchanged because the stress falls on the penultimate syllable.

(See pages 147 and 148 for more on plurals.)

Exercise 8

Can you give the plural forms of the following?

1 uma nuvem a cloud 2 o prato the dish 3 um pente a comb 4 a praia the beach

Exercise 9

Now give the singular forms of these words. The first has been done for you:

1 os tapetes

the carpets

 \rightarrow

o tapete

2 as cadeiras 3 os lápis the chairs the pencils

4 umas revistas

(some) magazines

5 uns carros

(some) cars

⁷ o telemóvel (Pt) mobile phone.

Pronunciation ...

If you have the recordings, listen to the different pronunciations of the letter s in Portuguese.

- s at the beginning of a word is as in the English 'same': sou (I am)
- s at the end of a word is like the final English s: inglês (English)
- s between two vowels is as in the English 'zebra': irlandesa (Irish)

Exercise 10

Bearing in mind who is being referred to in each case, do you think that the sentences below are all correct? Provide the correct version of each sentence where necessary.

- 1 Kathleen é irlandês
- Jorge é português
- 3 Isabel é portuguesa
- 4 Ela é holandês
- 5 Você (Matthew) é inglês e [and] eu (Jane) sou escocês
- 6 Andrew é escocês mas [but] Jules é francesa (French)

Exercise 11

Read the following short passage and answer the questions which follow:

Chamo-me Jorge. Sou do Brasil. Sou brasileiro. Apresento-lhe o Paulo. Ele é de Portugal; é português. Qual é a nacionalidade da Isabel? Ela é italiana? Ah, ela é brasileira também.

- 1 True or false? Jorge introduces himself by stating that he is from Italy.
- 2 What does he say about Paulo?
- 3 What information does he want to know about Isabel?
- 4 What is he surprised to find out?

Food and drink

Getting the waiter's attention:

Faz favor! Excuse me! Por favor! Excuse me!

What you will be asked:

Que deseja? What would you like?

(to one person)

What would you like? Que desejam?

(to more than one person)

Asking for something to eat and drink:

um café a black coffee um cafezinho an espresso um chá

a tea uma cerveja a beer

a half pint of (draught) beer um chope

uma água mineral a mineral water uma água mineral com gás a fizzy mineral water a still mineral water uma água mineral sem gás um café com leite8 a large white coffee

a ham sandwich um sanduíche de presunto uma sandes de queijo (Pt) a cheese sandwich

um sanduíche9 a sandwich

uma tosta mista (Pt) a toasted ham and cheese

sandwich

um misto quente (Br) a toasted ham and cheese

sandwich

um cachorro quente a hot-dog um bolo a cake

Saying 'please', 'thanks' and 'how much?'

faz favor please por favor please

thank you (very much) (muito) obrigado/a How much is it?

quanto é?

⁸ um café com leite; in Portugal um galão.

⁹ In Portugal uma sanduíche.

24

Dialogue 4 Faz favor!

See if you can discover what Jorge and Cristina are ordering

JORGE:

Faz favor!

EMPREGADO:

Boa tarde. Que desejam?

JORGE:

Boa tarde, um café e um bolo, por favor.

EMPREGADO:

E a senhora?

CRISTINA:

Um café com leite e um sanduíche de presunto,

por favor.

EMPREGADO:

Mais alguma coisa? (Anything else?)

JORGE:

Mais nada, muito obrigado.

(Nothing else, thanks very much.)

Go through Dialogue 4 again. Now it's your turn to order for them:

(a) For Jorge, ask for a small black coffee and a cake.

(b) For Cristina, ask for a large white coffee and a ham sandwich, and reply, 'Nothing else, thanks very much' to the waiter's last question.

Exercise 12

Here is a bill (uma conta) from a snack bar (uma lanchonete) but it has a few things missing from the list below in English. Can you discover which things and add them to the list in Portuguese:

a toasted ham and cheese sandwich a cake, a white coffee

a ham sandwich

a guaraná¹⁰, a beer

a cheese sandwich

a fizzy mineral water

Lanchonete Carioca

1	sanduíche de	presunto
1	misto quente	

1 café com leite

1 guaraná

...........

10 Brazilian soft drink made from the seeds of an Amazonian plant.

How much can you remember?

7	Fill in the missing words:
	Lidia: se chama?
	Pablo:me Pablo.
	Lidia: espanhol? (Spanish)
	Pablo: Sou de Madrid. E você?
	Lidia: Sou, sou de Portugal.
2	What greeting would you give in Portuguese?
	It is 9 a.m. in the morning
	Now it is 6 p.m. in the evening!
	And now it is 11 p.m. at night!
3	Ask someone you have just met:
	If he is English. Find out where he is from. Ask his name. Say

you are (name) and you are from Italy.

- 4 (a) Name three drinks you might order.
 - (b) Would you eat: um cafezinho, um bolo, um chope?
 - (c) Would you drink: um sanduíche, uma cerveja, um café com leite?
- 5 Can you provide the questions which match the following replies?
 - 1 Boa tarde, vou bem obrigado.
 - 2 Chamo-me Isabel.
 - 3 Sou de Paris.
 - 4 Tudo bem, obrigado.
 - 5 A minha nacionalidade é espanhola.
- 6 Now talk about yourself. Say what your name is, what nationality you are, and where you are from.
- 7 Read this short passage, answer the questions which follow and then translate it into English:

Carlos e Fernanda são brasileiros. Vivem no Rio de Janeiro no Brasil. Vêm a Portugal todos os anos para visitarem o irmão deles, José, que vive no Porto.

- What nationality are Fernanda and Carlos?
- Where do they come from?

3 Why do they visit Portugal and how often do they make the trip?

they live

they come

Vocabulary

vivem vêm

todos os anos each year o irmão deles their brother

who lives in Oporto que vive no Porto

Vocabulary

In order to build up your vocabulary, why not start a small notebook which contains various headings? For example:

p 1. Greetings	p 2. Drinks	p 3. Various
Tudo bem? How are you?	um chá a tea	Sim Yes Bem Well

Use your dictionary to add to your word lists. For example, you might want to know how to ask for other drinks not listed in this lesson, or to extend the list of nationalities. As you consult your dictionary, make a point of noting down at the same time the gender of a word (i.e. whether it is masculine or feminine). For example, for 'house' you will find casa (f). You already know from this lesson the word for the English 'a' which can be either um, uma, uns or umas depending on the noun involved, and the different forms for 'the' in Portuguese: o, a, os, as. In this case, casa is feminine singular:

uma casa a house

a casa the house

2 Gosto de viajar

I like to travel

In this lesson you will learn about:

- · using the verbs ser and estar
- · expressing likes and dislikes
- using the present indicative of regular verbs
- · describing yourself and saying what you do
- · telling the time
- · the days of the week

The following Brazilian speakers were asked to give a brief description of their lives, likes, dislikes and personalities by the local radio station. O locutor ('the radio announcer') asks them to Fale-me de você ('tell me a bit about yourself')

Dialogue 1 Álvaro 00

ÁLVARO:

O LOCUTOR: Fale-me de você.

Sou cantor de bossa nova.¹ Trabalho num² clube no³ Guarujá. Sou casado mas separado. Moro num apartamento perto da praia. Gosto de tocar violão; de arte. Não gosto de violência; de intolerância. Personalidade? Sou bastante tímido mas gosto muito de me divertir.

I am a bossa nova singer. I work in a club in the Guarujá. I'm married but separated. I live in a flat near the beach. I like playing the guitar; art. I don't like violence; intolerance. Personality? I'm quite shy but I like a good laugh.

1 Bossa nova is a mixture of samba and jazz.

2 **num clube: em** + **um** → **num** ('in a') Similarly, with the feminine indefinite article: **em** + **uma** → **numa**

Moro numa casa I live in a house

3 no Guarujá: em + o \rightarrow no ('in the') Similarly, with the feminine definite article: em + a \rightarrow na

Trabalho na lanchonete I work in the snack bar

em can also mean 'on': na televisão on the TV

Dialogue 2 Paulo

O LOCUTOR: Fale-me de você.

PAULO:

Sou eletricista.⁴ Trabalho numa companhia no centro de Copacabana, no Rio. Sou casado. Moro numa casa moderna. Gosto de esportes; de jogar futebol.⁵ Não gosto da comida chinesa; de palavras cruzadas. Personalidade? Sou extrovertido⁶ e bastante preguiçoso.

I'm an electrician. I work in a company in the centre of Copacabana in Rio. I'm married. I live in a modern house. I like sports; playing football. I don't like Chinese food; crosswords. Personality? I'm an extrovert and quite lazy.

4 Sou eletricista 'I'm an electrician'. There is no need for 'a/an' with professions.

tocar means 'to play (music)' while jogar means 'to play (sport)'.

6 Sou extrovertido 'I'm an extrovert'. There is no need to say 'a' or 'an' when one is describing oneself in Portuguese.

Dialogue 3 Graça

O LOCUTOR: Fale-me de você.

GRAÇA:

Sou vendedora. Trabalho numa loja de brinquedos nos⁷ arredores de Curitiba, no Brasil. Não sou casada.⁸ Sou solteira. Moro num apartamento alugado. Gosto de viajar; de cinema. Não gosto de

tempo frio; de transporte público. Personalidade? Sou faladora e descontraída.

I'm a shop assistant. I work in a toy shop on the outskirts of Curitiba in Brazil. I'm not married. I'm single. I live in a rented flat. I like travelling; the cinema. I don't like cold weather; public transport. Personality? I'm talkative and laid-back.

7 Nos arredores: em + os (mpl) → nos ('in the') Similarly, with the feminine plural definite article:

Há nova tecnologia nas fábricas

There is new technology in the factories

 $em + as \rightarrow nas$ ('in the')

8 Não sou casada: remember that, if the speaker is feminine, the adjective usually changes at the end from o to a.

The present indicative tense of regular verbs

Revise **regular and irregular** verbs and the uses of the present indicative tense in Lesson 1.

	trabalhar	to work
eu	trabalh <i>o</i>	I work
tu	trabalh <i>as</i>	you work
você	trabalh <i>a</i>	you work
o senhor	trabalh <i>a</i>	you work
a senhora	trabalh <i>a</i>	you work
ele	trabalh <i>a</i>	he, it works
ela	trabalh <i>a</i>	she, it works
nós	trabalhamos	we work
vocês	trabalh <i>am</i>	you work
os senhores	trabalh <i>am</i>	you work
as senhoras	trabalham	you work
eles	trabalh <i>am</i>	they work
elas	trabalh <i>am</i>	they work

Trabalhar is an example of a regular Portuguese -ar verb. The letters -ar are removed from the stem (trabalh-) and are replaced by: -o, -as, -a, -amos and -am. These five endings are all you need to learn for the present indicative tense of any regular verb ending in -ar.

Two more groups of verbs exist in Portuguese, which end in either **-er** or **-ir**. The present indicative of these two groups of verbs are formed in the same way as that of **-ar** verbs:

```
-er verbs: vender ('to sell') \rightarrow vend- plus the endings: -o, -es, -e, -emos and -em
-ir verbs: partir ('to leave') \rightarrow part-, plus the endings: -o, -es, -e, -imos and -em
```

These endings are added to the stem of the verb as in the case of the -ar verb trabalhar. Here are two more examples:

comer to eat	decidir	to decide
como	decido	I
comes	decid <i>es</i>	you
come	decid <i>e</i>	he, she, it, you (s)
comemos	decidimos	we
comem	decidem	they, you (pl)

Exercise 1

Write out in full, referring to the above chart, the following verbs: **viver** ('to live') and **dividir** ('to divide').

The verb gostar de ('to like')

Gostar de is another example of an -ar verb but this verb is one which is always followed by the preposition de ('of/from'):

Gosto de cantar	I like to sing (I like singing)
Gosto de viajar	I like to travel (I like travelling)

If **gostar de** is followed by the complete form of the verb - i.e. the infinitive form: 'to sing', 'to dance', etc. - the **de** will remain unaltered as in the examples above. If referring to a *specific* noun, however, the **de** contracts with the definite article, **-o**, **-a**, **-os** or **-as**, according to whether the noun is masculine, feminine or in the plural.

Examples:

gosto de + verb trabalhar . . . nadar

. . . beber café

gosto de + noun ... bolos (in general)

. . . revistas

. . . computadores

gosto de + noun (specific) gosto da música jazz

gosto da poesia do T S Eliot

Vocabulary

nadar to swim revistas (fpl) magazines computadores (mpl) computers

Exercise 2

Can you fill in the correct form of de?

Gosto d —— roupa (f) I like clothes
Gostamos d —— fruta (f) We like fruit
Gostam d —— viajar They like travelling
Gosta d —— cinema francês He likes French cinema
Gostas d —— rádio (m) You like the radio

Gostam d —— casas modernas (fpl) They like modern houses

Exercise 3

Re-read Dialogues 2 and 3. Imagine that Paulo and Graça have exactly the same likes and dislikes, and then describe them: 'they like ...'/they don't like ...'. For example: Gostam de esportes.

Exercise 4

Can you give your likes/dislikes from the list below? Write out in full gosto de/não gosto de . . .

a música 'rock' rock music
ver as telenovelas to watch soaps on TV

a política ler poesia os filmes de Woody Allen politics

to read poetry Woody Allen films

a energia nuclear escrever cartas a editoração eletrônica nuclear energy to write letters

desk-top publishing

(Re-read or listen again to the dialogues at the beginning of the lesson as a guide.)

Exercise 5

Re-read Dialogue 1. Now you have to describe Álvaro's life to someone else. 'He sings...'; 'he doesn't like...', etc. Try to translate the rest of the details Álvaro reveals about himself in Portuguese.

Exercise 6

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

A família Gonçalves vive em Planaltina, nos arredores de Brasília. A mãe (Lucília) é telefonista num consultório médico. O pai (José) é mecânico numa garagem.

- 1 Where does the family live exactly?
- 2 What do the parents do for a living?

Exercise 7

Can you write these potted histories for two singers, one male, one female:

JORGE: Sou cantor ...

casado São Paulo casa tímido a ópera (sim gosto) o futebol (não gosto)

CLARA: Sou cantora ...

solteiro Manaus (Amazonas) casa preguiçoso o andar⁹ (sim gosto) o esporte (não gosto)

The endings of adjectives and nouns

Remember that the adjectives describing Clara ('single', 'lazy') will change because she is a female speaker (refer to the section about nationalities in the first lesson). Nouns denoting professions also alter according to who is speaking or being referred to. There are a variety of ways in which adjectives can end, as the following demonstrate.

(1) The masculine singular form ends in -o (but not -ão):

masculine:			feminine:	
honesto	(s)	\rightarrow	honesta	$(-o \rightarrow -a)$
honestos	(pl)	\rightarrow	honestas	$(-os \rightarrow -as)$
o engenheiro	(s)	\rightarrow	a engenheira	engineer
os engenheiros	(pl)	\rightarrow	as engenheiras	engineers

(2) The masculine singular form ends in -e

inteligente	\rightarrow	inteligente (no	change takes place)
inteligentes	\rightarrow	inteligentes		
o gerente	\rightarrow	a gerente	manager	
os gerentes	\rightarrow	as gerentes	managers	

(3) The masculine singular form ends in -r

falador	\rightarrow	faladora	(add -a)
faladores	\rightarrow	faladoras	
o professor	\rightarrow	a professora	teacher
os professores	\rightarrow	as professoras	teachers

(4) The masculine singular form ends in -a

pessimista	\rightarrow	pessimista	
		(no c	hange takes place)
pessimistas	\rightarrow	pessimistas	
o jornalista	\rightarrow	a jornalista	journalist
os jornalistas	\rightarrow	as jornalistas	journalists

The position and agreement of adjectives

Adjectives usually follow the noun and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer:

a	arquit	etura	modern <i>a</i>	
n	odern	archi	tecture	

um atleta vigoroso a powerful athlete

⁹ o andar or o caminhar walking

as aulas de direção caras os vinhos tintos expensive driving lessons red wines

When an adjective refers jointly to a masculine and a feminine noun, the adjective always takes the masculine plural form:

três canetas (fpl) e dois lápis (mpl) vermelhos

Exercise 8

Graça wants to change her job (o emprego) so she consults Álvaro who, before taking up bossa nova singing, tried out quite a few different occupations. How would Graça write out a similar list of professions? And which job does she finally choose?

Álvaro

Graça

Sim!

Professions

médico jornalista padeiro gerente pintor carpinteiro

Professions

uma médica . . . ? Não.

uma ?

uma jornalista.

Vocabulary

o médico doctor
o pintor painter
o carpinteiro carpenter

o gerente o jornalista manager journalist

o padeiro ba

baker

Cardinal Numbers

Memorize the following numbers from 1 to 50:

		pronounced:
um, uma ¹⁰	1	oom, oomah
dois, duas ¹⁰	2	dois, dooers
três	3	tres
quatro	4	kwahtroo
cinco	5	seenkoo
seis	6	says
sete	7	setjee
oito	8	oitoo
nove	9	nov
dez	10	des
onze	11	onz
doze	12	doz
treze	13	trez
catorze	14	katorz
quinze	15	keenz
dezesseis	16	dizesays (Pt dezasseis)
dezessete	17	dizesetjee (Pt dezassete)
dezoito	18	dizoitoo
dezenove	19	dizenov (Pt dezanove)
vinte	20	veentjee
vinte e um/uma	21	veentjee-ee-oom/oomer
vinte e dois/duas etc.	22	veentjee-ee-dois/dooers
trinta	30	treenta
trinta e cinco	35	treenta-ee-seenkoo
quarenta	40	kwarenta
cinquenta	50	seenkwenta

^{10 &#}x27;one' and 'two' (um/a, dois/duas) agree with what is being referred to: uma rua (f) ('a street') / um café (m) ('a coffee')

Exercise 9

Here are three advertisements from a newspaper (um jornal) for various staff (o pessoal). Can you answer the following questions with the aid of the vocabulary below?





Os interessados

deverão enviar

Curriculum Vitae

com pretensão salarial para

C. Postal 223

CEP 05067-900 sob o código

CLS-002

São Paulo/SP

SECRETÁRIA DIRETORIA

- Formação universitária ou cursando, sólidos conhecimentos de microinformática e inglês.
- Redação própria, experiência mínima de 2 anos.
- Iniciativa, dinamismo e organização são características imprescindíveis.

GERENTE DE MARKETING

Profissional dinâmico e auto-motivado, com vivência de 3 anos na área de marketing/vendas, experiência na supervisão de equipes. Nível superior completo, desejá-vel fituência em inglês e pós- graduação em Marketing p/ agência de Marketing Internacional. C. V. c/ prt. sal. p/ o FAX: 531-7838 ou CP 21007-59. CEP 04698-970.

CABELEIREIRAS/OS PRECISAM-SE

Com prática. Boa remune ração. Fernanda Ros Cabeleireiros.

Tel.: 082-357889

Vocabulary

seleciona admite pessoas precisam-se cabeleireiros/as gerente de marketing secretária de diretoria requisitos necessários com prática/experiência boa apresentação redação própria fluência em inglês iniciativa e organização ambição e dinamismo boa remuneração experiência na área nível superior automóvel imprescindível enviar Curriculum Vitae pretensão salarial

selects

staff wanted/required wanted/required hairdressers marketing manager executive secretary important requirements with experience good appearance writing skills fluent in English initiative and organization ambition and dynamism good remuneration experience required university graduate car essential send C.V.

1 Can you find the advertisement for hairdressers? Is the pay good?

requested salary

- 2 What qualities are required for the secretarial post?
- 3 Which advertisement would prefer post-graduate applicants?

Days of the week: Os dias da semana

Exercise 10

Look at this page from Paulo's diary (a agenda). He had already marked in his commitments for the week but suddenly remembers that he must arrange a meeting . . .

segunda-feira	
terça-feira	comprar um presente
quarta-feira	escrever uma carta
quinta-feira	ir à universidade
sexta-feira	
sábado	descansar
domingo	visitar amigos

Vocabulary

comprar um presente to buy a gift

ir à universidade to go to the university

descansar to rest

visitar amigos to visit friends escrever uma carta to write a letter

quarta-feira Wednesday

(there is no need for the article)

na segunda-feira on Monday

(the article is needed when 'on' is used)

nos domingos on Sundays

trabalho na quarta(-feira) I work on Wednesday

hojetodayquinze diasfortnighttodos os diaseveryday

que dia é hoje? what date is it today?

que dia da semana é hoje? what day of the week is today?

- 1 What days does he have free?
- 2 Is he available on Thursday?
- 3 He is extremely busy on Friday. True or false?
- 4 What does Paulo do at the weekend (o fim de semana)?

Contraction

When a means 'at/to' and precedes the definite article o/a/os/as, the words contract as follows:

vou à universidade (fs)

I'm going to the university (a + a)vão ao parque (ms)

they go to the park (a + o)he goes to the shops (a + as)

sai aos domingos (mpl) she goes out on Sundays

 $(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{os})$

Days of the week are feminine except for **sábado** and **domingo**. The **'-feira'** element can be dropped:

Vou na segunda

I'm going on Monday

Dialogue 4 Um encontro

Paulo wants to arrange a meeting (marcar um encontro or arranjar uma reunião) with someone who works on the floor below him. First he has to describe himself over the telephone

Paulo: Como é que nos vamos reconhecer? Eu sou muito

alto, um pouco gordo, moreno e tenho uma barba.

JOANA: E eu sou bastante baixa, magra, uso óculos e tenho

cabelo crespo. Então, junto do elevador na sexta

à uma hora. Até logo!

Paulo: How will we recognise each other? I'm very tall,

well-built, dark and I have a beard.

JOANA: And I'm quite small, slim, wear glasses and I have

curly hair. So, next to the lift on Friday at one. See

you then!

Vocabulary: à uma hora at one o'clock

Muito and pouco

Used adjectivally **muito** and **pouco** agree with the noun referred to:

Tenho muitos vídeos

Há muita gente na rua

I have a lot of videos

There are many people in

the street

Lêem poucas revistas

A loja tem pouca variedade

They read few magazines

The shop has little variety

If used adverbially, however, both muito and pouco are invariable:

Somos muito altos

We are very tall

Estas luvas são muito caras

These gloves are very expensive

Usamos pouco a varanda

We do not use the verandah much

Conhece pouco as obras de Shakespeare

He knows little about Shakespeare's works

Adjectives

Study the following descriptions of physical appearance (a aparência física):

(Eu) Sou de estatura média

I am of average build

(Ele/Ela/Você) é alto/alta

He/she is; You are tall

Tenho cabelo ('hair') preto/loiro/ruivo/castanho

I have black/blonde/red/brown hair

Tenho cabelo comprido/curto/liso/crespo

I have long/short/straight/curly hair

Tenho olhos ('eyes') azuis/verdes/castanhos

I have blue/green/brown eyes

Tem (he/she has; you have), etc.

Vocabulary

alto/a tall médio/a
baixo/a short feio/a
magro/a slim/thin bonito/a
gordo/a fat

Exercise 11

Here are some contrasting types of character. Using your dictionary, can you match the pairs? The first one has been done for you.

tímido/a
otimista
impaciente
inteligente
trabalhador/a

preguiçoso/a
calma
estúpido/a
extrovertido/a
pessimista

Telling the time

Study the following sentences:

Oue horas são? What time is it?

(lit.: What hours are they?)

average

handsome/pretty

ugly

São três horas

São nove horas

São quinze para as cinco¹¹

It's three o'clock

It's nine o'clock

It's a quarter to five

É uma hora

It's one o'clock (uma because

hora is feminine)

É meio-dia

É meia-noite

A que horas?

à uma e cinco

às três e meia

It's midday

It's midday

It's midday

It's midday

At what time?

at five past one

at half past three

Expressing minutes past the hour:

São duas e vinte It's t

It's twenty past two

Expressing minutes to the hour:

São dez para as cinco It's ten to five

11 the expression 'faltam quinze para (as cinco)' can also be used.

The word horas is optional (as in English) in these cases:

às três (horas)

at three (o'clock)

às duas (horas) da tarde

at two (o'clock) in the afternoon

The 24-hour clock can be used, as in the UK, when referring to departure and arrival times of trains and the like:

O trem (Pt: o comboio) sai às quinze e cinquenta The train leaves at 15.50

Exercise 12

Look at the following clocks. What are these times in Portuguese?









Other expressions concerning time

em ponto (precisely)

menos um quarto (Pt) quarter to e um quarto (Pt)

quarter past

e meia half past

You can also add on:

da manhã in the morning da tarde in the afternoon in the evening.

da noite in the evening at two o'clock in the afternoon

You can refer to parts of the day with no mention of time by saying

de manhã, de tarde, de noite:

De manhã vou ao escritório

In the morning I go to the office

Vocabulary

esta manhã/tarde/noite this morning/afternoon/evening

Até amanhã! See you tomorrow!

Até amanhã de manhã! See you tomorrow morning!

Até logo! See you later!
Até breve! já! See you soon!
Até à próxima! See you next time!

um minutoa minuteÉ cedoIt's earlyÉ tardeIt's late

A clock can be: certo atrasado adiantado

correct slow fast

Exercise 13

Look at the following list of programmes on **Rede Globo** (Globo Network) for **segunda-feira** (Monday) and answer the following questions in Portuguese:

Globo 7h00 Bom Dia Brasil 7h30 Bom Dia São Paulo 8h30 TV ColOsso - Infantil 12h30 Globo Esporte - informativo 12h45 São Paulo Já 13h15 Jornal Hoje 13h40 Olimpíadas 96 14h10 Despedida de Solteiro 15h45 Filme: Um tira no Jardim de Infância 17h15 Malhação - novela 17h45 Quem É Você - novela 18h40 São Paulo Já 18h55 Vira Lata – novela (estréia) 20h00 Jornal Nacional 20h30 Horário Político: PSC 20h35 Explode Coração - novela 21h40 Tela Quente: Batman, o Retorno 0h00 Intercine: O Último dos Moicanos 2h00 Jornal da Globo 2h35 Filme: Cinderela em Paris

Vocabulary

ao vivo

os anúncios da televisão	TV advertisements
os programas da televisão	TV programmes
o programa infantil	children's programme
os desenhos animados	cartoons
as notícias	the news
Jornal Nacional	the National News
as Olimpíadas 96	'96 Olympic Games
a novela	the soap opera
a estréia	the première

- 1 What time would you switch on if you were a sports fan?
- 2 When should you tune in if you want to watch the première of a soap opera?

live

- 3 When is the political programme on?
- 4 You are going to be out between **meio-dia** and **cinco e meia**. How many programmes will you miss?

The verb estar

Portuguese has *two* verbs for 'to be', one of which you already know, **ser**. The other is **estar**. The present indicative tense of **ser** and **estar** is as follows:

ser	estar	
sou	estou	I am
és	estás	you are, etc.
é	está	
somos	estamos	
são	estão	

How do you decide when to use which verb?

1 O gato é preto The cat is black
2 O gato está doente The cat is ill

- 1 Here the verb **ser** is used to denote an unchanging state regarding the colour of the cat his fur is black, and he will remain black. This is a permanent characteristic.
- 2 Here the verb **estar** is used because although the cat is ill at present, he will most probably recover and no longer be ill. This is a temporary state.

Expressing location

1 O banco é na esquina
2 O cão está no sofá
The bank is on the corner
The dog is on the sofa

In the first example, **ser** is used because the bank is an unchanging feature on the corner. This is taken to be a permanent state. In the second example, **estar** is used instead of **ser** because the dog is, at the moment, on the sofa. He may, however, decide to jump off half an hour later in order to go for a walk. This state may change at anytime.

Exercise 14

Can you fill in the correct part of the verbs ser or estar?

A janela —— aberta
O carro —— azul
A menina —— inglesa
Ele —— triste
Elas —— na cozinha
Curitiba —— uma
cidade no Brasil

The window is open
The car is blue
The girl is English
He is sad
They are in the kitchen
Curitiba is a city in Brazil

Exercise 15

Read the following passage, answer the questions on it then translate it into English:

Sou médico e moro num apartamento no Rio de Janeiro. Trabalho num hospital no centro da cidade. Sou bastante alto e moreno. Gosto de computadores. Não gosto de estar doente.

- 1 How does the speaker describe his looks?
- 2 What does he do for a living and where exactly does he work?
- 3 He does not like computers. True or false?

How much can you remember?

- 1 How would you say the following in Portuguese?
- 1 I like jazz music; I don't like politics.
- 2 I work in a company in Rio on Wednesdays.
- 3 He is American, quite shy, but an optimist.

2 What do you think the following mean?

1 precisa-se 2 inteligente 3 feio

4 o jornal 5 calma 6 o apartamento 7 uma revista 8 baixo 9 a praia

3 How do you form the plurals of these words?

1 a casa 2 pessimista 3 o cinema 4 o pintor

4 Can you give the the feminine of these?

1 o médico 2 o senhor 3 o cantor 4 o jornalista 5 solteiro 6 tímido

5 Can you give the following times in Portuguese?

12.30 p.m. 2.15 p.m. 15.45 9.00 a.m.

and translate:

duas e meia meia-noite nove e vinte uma hora sete e dez três horas

3 Parabéns!

Congratulations!

In this lesson you will learn about:

- · expressing age, date and place of birth
- · family relationships
- · using the preterite tense
- · using possessive adjectives and pronouns
- · asking for a table and ordering food in a restaurant

Dialogue 1 De onde você é, Maria?

A new colleague, Maria, has started work in the same office as Miguel. They start to chat

MIGUEL: De onde você é, Maria?

MARIA: Sou de Teresópolis.

MIGUEL: Ah sim! Eu também. Nasci na Serra, nos arredores.

Tenho trinta e dois anos.

Maria: Quando é o seu aniversário?

MIGUEL: No dia dez de Novembro. E o seu?

Maria: Hoje é o dia dos meus anos!

MIGUEL: Então meus parabéns! Quantos anos faz?

Maria: Faço trinta anos.

MIGUEL: Where are you from, Maria?

Maria: I'm from Teresópolis.

MIGUEL: Ah! So am I. I was born in the Serra, in the suburbs.

I'm 32.

Maria: When is your birthday?

MIGUEL: The 10th of November. And yours?

MARIA: It's my birthday today!

MIGUEL: Well, congratulations! How old are you?

MARIA: *I'm 30*.

Expressing age

Portuguese does not use the verb 'to be' (ser) but instead the verbs ter ('to have') or fazer ('to make/do') to express age and date of birth:

o: Ouantos anos tem?

A: Tenho 30

lit.: How many years do you have? I have 30

o: Quantos anos faz?

A: Faço 30

lit.: How many years do you make? I make 30

Vocabulary

Parabéns! Congratulations/Happy birthday!

o dia de anos (Pt) birthday (lit.: the day of years)
o aniversário birthday/anniversary

o aniversário birthday/anniversary
o aniversário de casamento wedding anniversary
Feliz aniversário! Happy birthday!

no dia dez de Novembro (on) the 10th of November

aniversariante (m,f) birthday boy/girl

Sing-along "Happy birthday" in Portuguese: 'Parabéns para você/ nesta data querida/muitas felicidades/muitos anos de vida'

Revise the numbers 1-50 in Lesson 2.

Exercise 1

Listen again to the dialogue (or, if you don't have the recordings, re-read the dialogue) then try to match the English expression in the left-hand column with its Portuguese equivalent on the right.

1 Miguel is 32 **É o dia do meu aniversário** 2 How old is Maria? **Quando é o seu aniversário?**

3 When is your birthday? O Miguel tem 32 anos

4 It's my birthday Quantos anos tem a Maria?

Names of months

These are very similar to the names of English months:

Janeiro Fevereiro Março Abril Maio Junho Julho Agosto Setembro Outubro Novembro Dezembro

Exercise 2

Here are the details of four people whose ages, birth dates and places of birth all differ. Imagine that you are each person in turn and say in Portuguese: 'I was born in (place)', 'my birthday is on (date)' and 'I am (age)'.

- 1 Ana. Age 13. Born on 6 May in Madeira.
- 2 Robert. Age 24. Born on 14 August in Ireland.
- 3 Pedro. Age 42. Born on 1 March in Spain.
- 4 Maria. Age 36. Born on 29 December in Brazil.

Exercise 3

Can you translate the following dialogue into English?

Antônio: Chamo-me Antônio, e você, como se chama?

Manuela: Chamo-me Manuela. De onde você é?

Antônio: Sou do Recife, e você?

Manuela: Sou de Belém. Tenho dezenove anos. Que idade tem?

ANTÔNIO: Tenho vinte e cinco anos.

Irregular verbs

Here is the present indicative of three common irregular verbs:

ter to have	fazer to do/make	ir to go
tenho I have	faço I do (I make)	vou I go
tens you have	fazes you do	vais you go
tem you have	faz you do	vai you go
he, she, it has	he, she, it does	he, she, it goes
temos we have	fazemos we do	vamos we go
têm they, you have	fazem they, you do	vão they, you go

There is a second verb meaning 'to have' – haver – in Portuguese. Whereas ter expresses possession, however, haver is mainly used in the third person (há), meaning (1) there is/are; (2) for; (3) ago:

Há muitas lojas em Londres

There are many shops in London

Há quanto tempo está em férias?

(for) How long have you been on holiday?

O ônibus partiu há dez minutos.

The bus left ten minutes ago.

Idiomatic uses of ter

As well as expressing age, **ter** is used in a number of idiomatic expressions instead of the verb 'to be':

ter fome1	to be hungry	ter sede	to be thirsty
ter cuidado	to be careful	ter vontade de	to be keen to
ter sono	to be sleepy	ter pressa	to be in a hurry
ter frio	to be cold	ter calor	to be warm
ter sorte	to be lucky	ter medo	to be afraid
ter razão	to be right	não ter razão	to be wrong
ter saudades de	to miss, to long for		

¹ In everyday conversation the verb **estar** + **com** is used to convey a condition or disposition, e.g.: **estou com fome**, I am hungry (*lit*.: I am with hunger).

Dialogue 2 A família

Antônio is asking Cristina about her family

Antônio: Bom dia, Cristina. Diga-me por favor, quantas pessoas

há na sua família?

CRISTINA: Há cinco. Os meus pais, a minha irmã, o meu irmão e

eu.

Antônio: São todos do Brasil?

CRISTINA: Não, eu nasci no Brasil mas os meus irmãos² são de

Portugal.

Antônio: Que idades têm vocês todos?

Cristina: Eu sou a mais velha³ e tenho vinte e três anos. O meu irmão Zé (José) tem vinte anos e a minha irmã mais nova⁴, a Cámi (Maria do Carmo), tem dezesseis.

Antônio: Hello, Cristina. Tell me please, how many people are there in your family?

Cristina: There are five. My parents, my sister, my brother and

Cristina: There are five. My parents, my sister, my broth myself.

Antônio: Are they all from Brazil?

Cristina: No, I was born in Brazil but my brother and sister are

from Portugal.

Antônio: How old are they all?

CRISTINA: I'm the oldest, I'm 23. My brother Zé is 20 and my

younger sister, Cámi, is 16.

2 os meus irmãos my brothers or my brother(s) and sister(s)

3 a mais velha the eldest (f) (o mais velho (m))

4 mais nova younger (f) (mais novo (m))

Exercise 4

Listen again to the dialogue above. If you don't have the recording, re-read the dialogue and answer the questions in English.

- 1 How many people are there in Cristina's family?
- 2 What are the names of her brother and sister?
- 3 How old are her brother and sister?
- 4 Where were they all born?

Possessive adjectives and pronouns

These possessives reflect ownership of a particular item, e.g. 'your gloves', 'his drink', etc., and agree in gender and number with the noun referred to.

Singular	ms	fs	mpl	fpl
my/mine (+ noun)	o meu	a minha	os meus	as minhas
your(s)	o teu	a tua	os teus	as tuas
his/her(s)/your(s)	o seu	a sua	os seus	as suas

Plural

our(s)	o nosso	a nossa	os nossos	as nossas
your(s)	o vosso	a vossa	os vossos	as vossas
their(s) your(s)	o seu	a sua	os seus	as suas

Examples

their friend	a sua amiga
her car	o seu carro
his houses	as suas casas
your books	os seus livros

In the example **o seu carro**, confusion may arise as to whose car is being referred to because this can be translated as: 'his car', 'her car', 'their car' or 'your car'. To avoid ambiguity the following alternative for 'him/her/their' can be used:

de + ele/ela de + eles/elas	(of him/of her) (of them/(mpl and fpl))
o carro dele	his car
o carro dela	her car
o carro deles	their car
o carro delas	their car

Possessive adjectives are frequently used without the definite article: **onde está minha caneta?**, 'where is my pen?'.

Although the personal pronoun vós (you) has all but disappeared from everyday speech, you will see that its equivalent set of possessive adjectives and pronouns are very much in use in Portugal: o vosso, a vossa, os vossos, as vossas. These pronouns are used to express the informal 'you' plural.

Omission of the article

If the possessive stands on its own, usually at the end of a sentence and is preceded by the verb **ser**, the definite article is dropped:

Este é meu	This is mine (i.e. Este (livro) é meu)
Esta é minha	This is mine (i.e. Esta (carta) é minha

In cases where ownership requires emphasizing, however, then the article reappears:

Este é o meu This is mine (i.e. not yours)

The possessive adjective is omitted when:

1 a relationship is obvious:

Ela vai a Lisboa com o filho (not o seu filho) She's going to Lisbon with her son.

2 referring to parts of the body:

os braços

my arms (not os meus braços)

Exercise 5

Here are some items belonging to two individuals. Try to fill in the correct possessive adjectives:

CRISTINA:

Na minha bolsa há:

In my handbag I have:

... bolsinha (f) my purse
... maquiagem⁵ (f) my make-up
... óculos (mpl) my spectacles
... vitaminas (fpl) my vitamin pills

Antônio:

Nos meus bolsos há:

In my pockets I have:

... carteira (f)
... agenda (f)
... chaves (fpl)
... óculos de sol (mpl)
my wallet
my diary
my keys
... óculos de sol (mpl)
my sunglasses

The important thing to remember with these adjectives is that they agree with the *noun* referred to and not *the person* who is the owner of the keys, wallet, etc.

Exercise 6

With the help of the vocabulary below, translate the following into English.

José: Oi, Teresa. Tem uma família grande ou pequena? Teresa: Tenho uma família grande: três filhos e uma filha. O

Vasco é o mais velho e a Clara é a mais nova ... as

idades variam entre os trinta e os quinze anos.

José: O seu marido é aposentado, não é? Você ainda trabalha?

TERESA: Sou dona de casa. Tenho sempre que fazer!

Vocabulary

grande	big	pequena/o	small	
o filho	son	a filha	daughter	
o seu marido		your husband		
a esposa		wife		
as idades vari	am	the ages vary		
o mais velho		the oldest		
a mais nova		the youngest		
entre os trinta e os quinze anos between 30		between 30 and	l 15 years of age	
ser aposentad	o (Pt: reformado)	to be retired		
dona de casa		housewife		
tenho sempre que fazer		I always have lots to do		

More numbers

Memorise the following numbers from 60 to two billion:

		pronounced:
sessenta	60	sesenta
setenta	70	setenta
oitenta	80	oitenta
noventa	90	noventa
cem	100	saing
cento e um/a	101	sentooeeoom/ah
cento e quinze, etc.	115	sentooeekeenz
cento e setenta	170	sentooeesetenta
duzentos/as	200	doozentoos/ers
trezentos/as	300	trezentoos
quatrocentos/as	400	kwatrosentoos
quinhentos/as	500	kinyentoos
seiscentos/as	600	saysentoos
setecentos/as	700	setsentoos
oitocentos/as	800	oitoosentoos
novecentos/as	900	novsentoos

⁵ also maquilagem (Pt: maquilhagem)

mil	1,000	meel
mil e um/a	1,001	meeleeoom/ah
dois mil	2,000	doysmeel
cem mil	100,000	saingmeel
trezentos mil	300,000	trezentoosmeel
um milhão	1 million	oom meelyow
dois milhões	2 million	doys meelyoys
um bilhão	1 billion	oom beelyow
dois bilhões	2 billion	dois beelyoys

Like 1 and 2, the numbers 200 to 900 alter according to whether the thing referred to is masculine or feminine, singular or plural:

um café (m)	a (one) coffee
duas malas (fpl)	two suitcases
setecentos livros	700 books (mpl)
setecentas cadeiras	700 chairs (fpl)

Dialogue 3 Onde foram vocês ontem?

Listen to, or read, the following conversation where people talk about what they did yesterday

MARIA:	Onde	foram	vocês	ontem?

Graça: Fomos dar um passeio de carro muito agradável pela

Serra da Mantiqueira. E vocês?

JORGE: Nós passamos o dia na praia. Tomamos banhos de mar

e banhos de sol. Foi ótimo!

Paulo: Nós também passamos um dia excelente. Gostamos

muito da paisagem.

MARIA: Where did you go yesterday?

GRAÇA: We went for a very pleasant trip in the car to the Serra

da Mantiqueira (the Mantiqueira Mountains). What did

you do?

JORGE: We spent the day on the beach. We swam and sunbathed.

It was great!

PAULO: We also had an excellent day. We loved the scenery.

The preterite tense

The verbs in the above dialogue are in the preterite tense. You form this from any regular verb by removing the -ar, -er or -ir endings from the infinitive form and replacing them with the following endings:

regular verbs	5		irregular verbs
passar	comer	partir	$ir + ser^6$
'to spend'	'to eat'	'to leave'	'to go' + 'to be'
pass <i>ei</i>	com <i>i</i>	part <i>i</i>	fui
passaste	comeste	partiste	foste
passou	comeu	part <i>iu</i>	foi
passamos	comemos	part <i>imos</i>	fomos
passaram	comeram	part <i>iram</i>	foram

6 The verbs ir and ser are exactly the same in the preterite tense.

You will see that the irregular verbs on the right do not follow the normal pattern of stem + endings in the case of the three regular verbs. Many irregular verbs in the preterite tense bear little resemblance to the verb in its infinitive form: for example, **querer** ('to want') has these forms in the preterite:

quis quiseste quis quisemos quiseram

Commitment to memory is, unfortunately, the only way to remember such verbs!

The preterite tense is used to refer to actions or events that took place in the past and which have an air of finality and completeness about them:

Ontem foi ao banco Yesterday he/she/you went to the bank (See personal pronouns, p. 224.)

Exercise 7

Follow the model given below and change the plural part of the verb in each case into the 1st person singular (eu) part of the verb:

Gostamos muito do jantar \rightarrow Gostei muito do jantar We really liked the meal \rightarrow I really liked the meal

1 **o restaurante onde fomos ontem** the restaurant where we went yesterday

2. Onde foram vocês?

Where did you go?

3 Nós passamos o dia na praia

We spent the day on the beach

4 Tomamos banhos de sol

We sunbathed

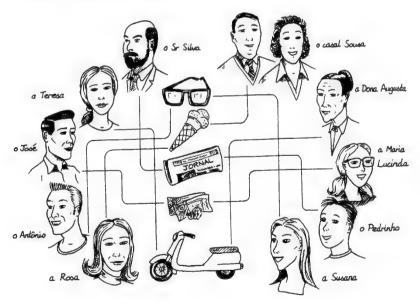
Exercise 8a

Give the preterite tense of the following: encontrar ('to find') esconder ('to hide') decidir ('to decide')

Exercise 8b

Look at the following drawing: the people on the left have lost something whilst those on the right have found something. Now try to answer the questions below, replying in the following way:

Foi ... (name) It was ...



Vocabulary

perder

who quem

to lose

achar

o casal Sousa

to find

the Sousas (the Sousa couple)

o dinheiro money

o sorvete

ice cream

Quem perdeu o dinheiro? (Who lost the money?)

Quem achou o jornal?

(Who found the newspaper?)

Quem perdeu os óculos?

Quem achou a motoneta?

Quem perdeu o sorvete?

Quem achou o dinheiro?

Quem perdeu a motoneta?

Quem perdeu o jornal?

Quem achou os óculos?

Ouem achou o sorvete?

Meals

The names of meals (as refeições) in Portuguese are as follows:

o café da manhã breakfast lunch o almoço o jantar dinner

o lanche afternoon snack

a ceia supper

Dialogue 4 Que desejam?

JORGE: Faz favor! O GARCOM:7 Que desejam?

Queríamos⁸ uma mesa para três. JORGE: Muito bem. Esta mesa serve? O GARÇOM: Está ótima. Tem o cardápio? MARIA:

Aqui tem o cardápio. Já querem pedir o jantar? O GARÇOM: Sim. Para mim, a salada mista e uma moqueca de GRAÇA:

camarão.9

Eu não quero salada. Queria só a peixada. 10 Não MARIA:

estou com muita fome.

Uma canja, 11 as costeletas com purê de batatas e JORGE:

uma cerveja bem gelada. Estou morrendo de fome

e com muita sede!

JORGE:

Queria a conta por favor.

O GARCOM:

Aqui está... o total é quinze reais¹² (R\$15,00).

JORGE:

Aqui tem vinte reais. Dê-me dois reais e cinquenta

centavos (R\$2,50) e pode guardar o troco.13

JORGE:

Excuse me!

WAITER:

Can I help you?

JORGE:

We'd like a table for three. That's fine. Will this table do?

WAITER: MARIA:

This is great. Do you have the menu?

WAITER:

Here it is. Are you ready to order?

Graça:

Yes. I'll have mixed salad and moqueca de camarão.

MARIA:

I don't want salad, I just want the fish stew. I'm not

very hungry.

JORGE:

Chicken soup, pork chops with mashed potatoes and

a glass of really cold beer. I'm starving and really

thirstv!

Later . . .

JORGE:

I'd like the bill please.

WAITER:

Here it is . . . the total is fifteen reais (R\$15,00).

JORGE:

Here's twenty. Give me two and a half reais and you

can keep the change.

Note: where a comma is used in English in four-figure numbers (e.g. 1,450, 10,450), a full stop is used in Portuguese (e.g. 1.450, 10.450).

Exercise 9

Below is a menu (o cardápio or o menu) similar to the one that the three friends above chose from. In Portuguese, call the waiter over, ask for a table for one and then order the items listed and later ask for the bill. You should be able to find all the expressions you need in the preceding dialogue.

Restaurante Sol

Entradas salada mista canja

K

Peixe
moqueca de camarão
peixada

*

Carne costeletas de porco xinxim de galinha¹⁴

*

Sobremesa pudim de leite mousse de chocolate fruta

You: (Excuse me!)

O GARÇOM: **Bom dia. Que deseja?**You: (A table for one.)

O GARCOM:

(A table for one.) Esta mesa serve?

You: (

(This is great. Can I see the menu please?)

O GARÇOM:

Aqui tem o cardápio. Deseja pedir?

You:

(Yes please. I'd like the mixed salad, shrimp

moqueca and a bottle of white wine.)

You: (Can I have the bill please?)

⁷ o garçom waiter

⁸ queríamos ... 'we would like ...'

⁹ moqueca de camarão shrimp stew with coconut milk

¹⁰ peixada fish stew with vegetables and eggs

¹¹ cania chicken soup

¹² o real (R\$) the Brazilian unit of currency (100 centavos = um real)

³ o troco change

¹⁴ xinxim de galinha chicken cooked with shrimps and dendê oil.

Vocabulary

starters entradas fish peixe meat carne dessert sobremesa uma garrafa de a bottle of chicken soup canja white wine vinho branco costeletas de porco pork chops red wine vinho tinto milk pudding pudim de leite fruit fruta

Asking questions

mousse de chocolate

Q: Como é o Museu Nacional?

What's the National Museum like?

A: O Museu Nacional é excelente.

The National Museum is excellent.

In the above question the normal order of subject and verb changes because a question word (**como**, **onde**) is at the start of the sentence. This also happens in English.

chocolate mousse

Where there is no question word, there is no need to invert the order of subject and verb; it is enough to assume a questioning tone of voice. The word order remains the same for both the statement and the question:

Q: Está muito doente?

Is he very ill? (question)

A: Está muito doente

He is very ill

The most common interrogatives and relatives are as follows:

interrogatives (question words) relatives (joining words)

que?	what, which?	quem	who
(o) que?	what?	que	that, which, who(m)
quem?	who?	o que	what, that, which
de quem?	whose?	quando	when

quando? when? onde where onde? where? from where donde aonde? to where? because, why porque por que?15 whv? como as, since como? how? cujo/a/os/as of which, whose quanto/a/os/as how much quanto/a/os/as how much?

Examples

Quem vai ao Brasil?

Who is going to Brazil?

Por que você não come?

Why aren't you eating?

Qual é a loja?

Which shop is it?

Que acha da peça?

What do you think of the play?

Ela sabe quem é

She knows who it is

Ele trabalha lá porque pagam bem

He works there because they pay well

Temos um tio cujo país favorito é a Espanha

We have an uncle whose favourite country is Spain

O café que gostamos vai fechar

The café we like is going to close down

Exercise 10

Read the following passage and answer the questions which follow:

Uma ótima refeição

Primeiro, uma canja; depois um prato de peixe cozido com batatas e, em seguida, outro de carne assada com arroz e uma salada de alface com tomate. Para a sobremesa, há fruta: laranjas, maçãs, uvas.

¹⁵ por que? at the beginning of the sentence; porquê, quê, o quê: when alone or ending a sentence

Vocabulary

a plate of chicken soup um prato de a canja roast beef boiled fish carne assada peixe cozido for dessert with rice para sobremesa com arroz salada de alface e tomate lettuce and tomato salad laranjas, maçãs, uvas oranges, apples, grapes

- 1 What does the first course consist of?
- 2 There is meat and fish on the menu. Which comes with potatoes and which is served with rice?
- 3 What does the salad consist of?
- 4 For dessert there are pears and chocolate mousse. True or false?

How much can you remember?

- **1** Translate into Portuguese:
- 1 How old are you? (There are two ways of asking this)
- 2 When is your birthday?
- 3 I'm in a hurry
- 4 I was born in London
- 5 My brother is 16. His girlfriend is 15
- 6 His keys and wallet
- 7 I'd like a table for two and the menu please
- 2 Can you fill in the blanks?

1 Estou ... de fome I'm starving

2 A... irmã...-se Clara My sister's name is Clara

3 Não ... razão He is wrong

4 Onde ...? Where were you born?

3 Translate into Portuguese:

1 my brothers 4 my purse 2 his car 5 their books 3 your sunglasses 6 your pen

4 Name four months of the year in Portuguese

5 How do you say the following numbers in Portuguese:

66, 73, 101, 23, 7, 87, 2000, 207, 8, 90, 45, 679, 10, 1, 36

6 True or false?

o jantar = breakfast a ceia = lunch o café da manhã = supper o almoço = dinner

7 Translate the following:

Nasci em Londres. Tenho vinte e dois anos. O meu aniversário é no dia quinze de Maio. Quantos anos faz o Paulo? Ele faz quarenta anos. O seu aniversário é no dia primeiro de Dezembro.

8 Read the following dialogue and answer the questions which follow:

José: Olá, Paulo! Você está bom?

Paulo: Bem, obrigado. E você?

José: Estou ótimo! Apresento-lhe o meu vizinho e

amigo, o Sr Mendes.

Paulo: Como vai? Sente-se, por favor. Quer vinho ou

cerveja?

SR Mendes: Uma cerveja, por favor. Há um telefone aqui

perto? Queria falar com a minha mulher.16

você está bom? how are you? sente-se sit down

o meu vizinho my neighbour quer ...? do you want ...?

apresento-lhe may I introduce ... amigo friend

aqui perto near here (in the vicinity)

- 1 Who does José introduce?
- 2 What does Paulo invite Sr Mendes to do?
- 3 What does he then suggest?
- 4 What drink does Sr Mendes choose?
- 5 What does Sr Mendes want to do?

¹⁶ also, a esposa wife

4 Desculpe!

Excuse me!

In this lesson you will learn about:

- finding your way about
- · getting a room in an hotel
- · choosing the correct way of saying 'you'
- · expressing future plans
- · using the imperative

Dialogue 1 Podia me dizer . . .?

José is in São Paulo, Brazil, to give a performance of fado¹ singing at the municipal theatre. But first, he has to find his way there

José: Faz favor, podia me dizer onde é o teatro munici-

pal?

MARGARIDA: Não sei, não conheço muito bem esta área ... ah!

é ali em frente, à direita.

José: Como? Pode falar mais devagar por favor?

MARGARIDA: Você siga² sempre em frente e depois vire³ à direita.

É em frente de um⁴ parque, junto de uma pequena

praça.

José: Obrigado. Margarida: De nada.

José: Excuse me, could you tell me where the municipal

theatre is?

MARGARIDA: I don't know, I don't know this area very well ...

ah! it's there, opposite, on the right.

José: Sorry? (Pardon?) Can you speak more slowly

please?

MARGARIDA: Continue straight ahead and then turn to the right.

It's opposite a park, beside a small square.

José: Thanks.

MARGARIDA: No problem (It's a pleasure/not at all).

1 o fado a type of melancholy Portuguese folk music

siga ('follow') is the imperative form of seguir
 vire ('turn') is the imperative form of virar

4 **de um, de uma:** in Portugal you are more likely to hear **de** contracting with an article than in Brazil (**dum, duma**)

Dialogue 2 Desculpe

Antônio is in Lisbon and wants to find a room for the night in uma pensão (a guest house)

Antônio: Desculpe. Há uma pensão aqui perto?

ANA: Não, não há. Mas há um hotel ali na Avenida da

Liberdade.

Antônio: Obrigado. Onde é?

Ana: Olhe⁵ é logo ali, à esquerda, na esquina, antes da

banca de jornais. Mas primeiro, o senhor tem de⁶

atravessar a rua.

Antônio: Muito obrigado. Boa tarde.

Ana: Não tem de quê.⁷

Antônio: Excuse me. Is there a guest house near here?

Ana: No there isn't. But there is a hotel over there in the

Avenida da Liberdade (Avenue of Liberty).

Antônio: Thanks, where is it?

Ana: Look, it's right there, on the left, on the corner

before the newspaper stand. But first you'll have to

cross the road.

Antônio: Thanks very much. Good afternoon.

ANA: That's OK.

5 Olhe ('Look!') is the imperative form of olhar

6 **tem de** (or **tem que**) is a combination of **ter** + **de/que** and is followed by the infinitive; it means 'to have to, must'

7 also: **não há de quê**

Exercise 1

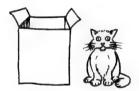
Answer the following in relation to the two dialogues:

- 1 What two ways are there of getting attention?
- 2 If you can't understand or follow what someone says, what word do you use to convey this?
- 3 How do you say: 'I don't know'?
- 4 Find the words for 'here' and 'there'. Look in your dictionary for other ways to say these words.
- 5 How do you say 'no problem'.

Compound prepositions

Where is the cat? Q: Onde está o gato? He is (beside) the box. A: Está (ao lado) da caixa

(de + a = da)



far from longe de behind atrás de em cima de on top of junto de/junto a next to in/on em inside dentro de ao lado de beside fora de outside of

in front of/opposite em frente de

perto de near

debaixo de underneath/below on the left of à esquerda de on the right of à direita de

As normal, the prepositions de and a contract with the definite article. For example:

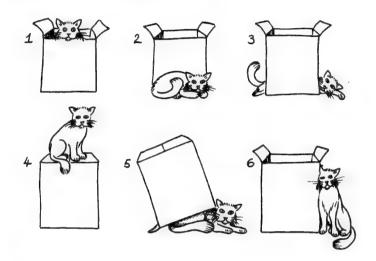
em frente da janela (f) perto dos edifícios (mpl) near the buildings junto à loja (f)

in front of the window next to the shop

Exercise 2

Can you say in Portuguese which position o gato is in?

O gato está (debaixo da caixa), etc.



Exercise 3

Give the opposites of:

longe de, em cima de, atrás de, dentro de

Getting someone's attention

The following terms are used in different situations:

Faz favor! Please/Excuse me!

(When you just want to attract someone's

attention)

Desculpe! Excuse me!

(If you have either to interrupt to get

someone's attention or to make your request

even more polite)

Com licença! E

Excuse me!

(When you have to ask someone to move out of the way, or to interrupt in order to attract

someone's attention)

The imperative

In the case of regular verbs the imperative is formed as follows:

-ar verbs -er verbs -ir verbs

1 fala! bebe! parte!

2 fale! beba! parta! você/o senhor/a senhora

3 falem! bebam! partam! vocês/os senhores/as senhoras/
(to more than one person addressed as tu)

4 falemos! bebamos! partamos! 'Let us speak/drink/leave!'

The verbs conhecer and saber

The present indicative of these two verbs is as follows:

Saber ('to know' facts)

sei sabes sabe sabemos sabem

Você sabe quantas pessoas estão aqui?

Do you know how many people are here?

Conhecer ('to know' places, people, about a subject)

conheco conheces conhece conhecemos conhecem

Ele conhece a Joana

He knows Joana

Forms of address for 'you'

Unlike English, which simply has one way of expressing 'you' – regardless of who is addressed, be it child, friend, adult or pet dog – Portuguese has the following forms which you use according to the type of person you are addressing:

		Use for
You	tu (pl vocês)	very close relationships
You	você(s)	informal 'you' between friends and people of the same age. In Brazil, used widely
You	o senhor os senhores a senhora as senhoras	polite, formal 'you'. Also used along with titles, doutor, etc.: o senhor doutor quer café? and any professional person

Other forms of address:

English style	Brazilian style
Mrs, Ms, Miss (mature age)	Dona + given name
Mr	Senhor + either given name or surname Seu + given name
Miss	Moça or Senhorita (or simply use given name) Menina (Pt)

Exercise 4

Read the following then answer the questions which follow.

Ana: Boa tarde. Faz favor, pode me dizer onde é o Jardim

América?8

JORGE: Veja bem. A senhora siga sempre em frente. Fique⁹ neste¹⁰ lado¹¹ da rua. No fim¹² desta¹³ praça¹⁴ vire à direita e imediatamente à sua esquerda encontra¹⁵ uma rua descendo¹⁶ diretamente para o Jardim América.

11 o lado 'side'

12 **no fim de** 'at the end of'

13 desta derives from de + esta ('of + this')

14 praça 'square'

15 encontra is from encontrar ('to find')

16 descendo 'going down'

⁸ o Jardim América is an elegant district south-west of São Paulo's city centre

⁹ fique is the imperative of ficar ('to stay/remain'); it is used as well as ser to signify position

¹⁰ **neste** derives from **em + este** ('on + this')

- 1 What does Ana ask first?
- 2 Ana interprets Jorge's directions as: 'Cross the road. At the end of the square turn to the left and immediately on your right you will find a road going directly down into the Jardim América district.' Is she completely right?

Contractions

The demonstrative **este**, etc., contracts with **em** with the following results:

 $em + este \rightarrow neste$ in/on this

em + esta → nesta

em + estes → nestes in/on these

em + estas → nestas

Este, etc., also contracts with de with these results:

 $de + este \rightarrow deste$ of/from this

de + esta → desta

de + estes → **destes** of/from these

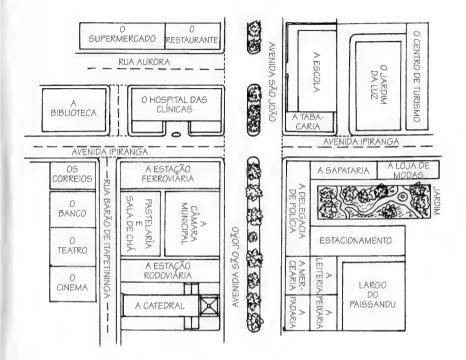
 $de + estas \rightarrow destas$

Exercise 5

- **A** Look at the city plan on page 71. Can you give directions to someone who wants to go:
- 1 from the railway station to the shoe-shop
- 2 from the school to Largo do Paissandu
- 3 from the cinema to the hospital
- 4 from the car park to the supermarket
- 5 from the bus station to the Post Office

Vocabulary

- a sapataria shoe-shop
 o cinema cinema
- a estação ferroviária railway station a estação de caminho de ferro (Pt) railway station



a escola school
o estacionamento car park
a estação rodoviária bus station
os correios, o correio post office
o supermercado supermarket
a biblioteca library
o banco bank

o Jardim da Luz

a mercearia
a padaria
a loja de modas

Luz (light) park
grocer's (shop)
baker's (shop)
dress shop

B Can you say where places are located? For example:

Onde é o supermercado? É em frente da biblioteca Where is the supermarket? It's opposite the library

1 Onde é o cinema? (It's next to the theatre)

2 Onde é o estacionamento? (It's behind the police station)

3 Onde é a pastelaria?¹⁷ (It's opposite the bank)

C Use **perto de** to answer the following:

1 Onde é a biblioteca? (É perto do/da . . .)

2 Onde é a catedral?

3 Onde é o Jardim da Luz?

Use ao lado de to answer these questions:

1 Onde é o teatro?

2 Onde é a escola?

3 Onde é a padaria?

The future tense using ir + infinitive

The use of ir + infinitive expresses intention to do something in the future. The 'true' future tense (e.g. 'I shall write', 'he will visit') will be dealt with later.

Vou fazer o jantar

I am going to cook dinner

Vai trabalhar esta noite

He is going to work tonight

Vou ver um filme no cinema

I am going to go see a film at the cinema

The present indicative also expresses the immediate future:

Telefono esta noite

I'll telephone tonight

Dialogue 3 Vou visitar Recife a negócios

Sr Silva is a Portuguese businessman visiting Brazil. He goes to a travel agency (uma agência de viagens) in Rio regarding his business trip (uma viagem de negócios) to Recife.

SR SILVA: Boa tarde. Vou visitar Recife a negócios. Preciso dum

quarto simples com banheiro. Vou viajar de avião, claro.

O AGENTE: Deseja um hotel de cinco ou de três estrelas?

SR SILVA: De três e só com café da manhã. 18 O AGENTE: E quanto tempo vai ficar em Recife?

SR SILVA: Vou ficar uma semana.

O AGENTE: Bom. Vou fazer as reservas. Dê-me19 o seu nome e

número de telefone, por favor.

SR SILVA: Hello. I'm going to visit Recife on business. I need a

single room with bathroom. I'll be travelling by plane

naturally.

Would you like a three star or five star hotel? AGENT:

SR SILVA: Three star, and with breakfast only.

And how long are you going to stay in Recife? AGENT:

SR SILVA: I'll be staying for a week.

Fine. I'll make the reservations. Give me your name AGENT:

and telephone number please.

Exercise 6

Now it's your turn to say in Portuguese:

We are going to Belo Horizonte and need a room with a bathroom. We are going to stay for two days. We would like (queríamos) a five star hotel.

Exercise 7

Can you put these words in order to make a correct sentence:

viajar de vou semana e uma ficar vou avião

¹⁷ a pastelaria a snack bar which specializes in a typical Brazilian sayoury called

¹⁸ o café da manhã 'breakfast' (Pt o pequeno almoço)

¹⁹ dê-me 'give me'

Dialogue 4 Posso ajudá-lo?

Sr Silva manages to arrive in Recife but minus a few items. He goes to the police station (a delegacia)²⁰ to report to the Lost Property department (os perdidos e achados)

O POLICIAL: Posso ajudá-lo? (Can I help you?)

SR SILVA: Ah, meu Deus! Perdi o meu passaporte. Ah! Nossa

Senhora! Não consigo encontrar os meus cheques de viagem nem os meus cartões de crédito. O que vou fazer? Procurei por toda a parte . . . Felizmente, ainda tenho a minha carteira com algum dinheiro e a minha pasta. Mas, onde está a minha pasta? Não acredito!

Perdi a minha pasta também!

20 a esquadra (Pt) 'Police Station'

Exercise 8

Here is the English translation of Sr Silva's dialogue. Some words have been substituted by a drawing. Can you guess what the missing words are? Write them down in English and Portuguese.











My	God! I've lost my Heavens! I can't find my no
my	What am I going to do? I've looked everywhere
	Fortunately, I still have my with some money and
my	? I don't believe it! I've
lost	my as well!

Exercise 9

Listen again to the dialogue if you have the recordings. If not, cover over the English and answer the following in Portuguese.

- 1 What items has Sr Silva lost? (Answer in full: 'He has lost ...')
- 2 What items does he think he still has?
- 3 What else has he lost?

Dialogue 5 Tem quartos vagos?

Sr Silva proceeds to his hotel but on arrival discovers that his room has not in fact been booked (reservado) and he has to reserve a room (reservar um quarto) himself

SR SILVA: Tem quartos vagos? Queria um quarto simples

por favor.

A RECEPCIONISTA: Para quantos dias? Uma semana? E o senhor

quer que tipo de quarto? Com chuveiro?²¹

SR SILVA: Prefiro com banheira. Qual é o preço?

A RECEPCIONISTA: Um quarto simples com banheiro e o café da

manhã incluído são vinte reais. Faz favor de

assinar aqui. E o seu passaporte?

SR SILVA: Perdi o meu passaporte. Tenho que ir amanhã

de manhã à embaixada ...

A RECEPCIONISTA: Oh, coitado do senhor! Aqui tem a chave, é o

número dezenove. Boa noite, até amanhã.

SR SILVA: Do you have any vacancies? I'd like a single

room please.

RECEPTIONIST: How long for? A week? And what kind of

room would you like? With a shower?

SR SILVA: I'd prefer a bath. How much is it?

A single room with bathroom and breakfast RECEPTIONIST:

comes to 20 reais. Please sign here. And your

passport?

I lost my passport. I have to go to the embassy SR SILVA:

tomorrow morning . . .

What a shame! Here's the key, it's number 19. RECEPTIONIST:

Good night, see you tomorrow.

21 also a ducha 'shower', which has more water pressure than o chuveiro

Exercise 10

Now it is your turn to ask for different types of rooms for varying periods of time. Begin your sentences with

Queria ... ('I'd like ...').

1 I'd like a double room with shower, TV and telephone for one week.

2 I'd like a single room with bath, shower and telephone for a fortnight.

3 I'd like a twin-bedded room with radio and TV for two nights.

a single room

a double room

Vocabulary

um quarto simples

um quarto para pessoa só

um quarto individual

um quarto de casal /

um quarto duplo

um quarto de casal com

duas camas

a twin-bedded room

com/sem ... with/without ...

banheira bath chuveiro, ducha shower

banheiro privativo private bathroom

a pensão completa²² full board a meia pensão²³ half board o ar condicionado air conditioning

a televisão²⁴ TVo rádio radio

oh, coitado/que azar!	that's unfortunate
vista para o mar	sea view
para quantos dias?	for how long?
a partir de até	from until
para uma noite	for a night
para uma semana	for a week
para um mês	for a month
para quinze dias	for a fortnight
o fim de semana	the weekend
Há/Tem?	Do you have?
um estacionamento	a car park

22 only available for package tours

most hotels in Brazil include breakfast in the daily rate; lunch and dinner are paid separately

a lift

24 o televisor 'television set'

Exercise 11

um elevador

Some people at a hotel find their rooms have certain items missing. Can you ask for them in Portuguese?

Desculpe, mas não há ...

Excuse me, but there is/there are no . . .

1 Excuse me, but there are no towels/there is no light.

2 Excuse me, but there is no telephone/toilet paper.

3 Excuse me, but there is no television set.

toalhas (fpl)

luz (fs)

papel higiênico (ms)

Exercise 12

Some people at a hotel discover that certain things are not working properly. With the help of the following expressions, can you explain in Portuguese to the hotel manager what the problem is:

Desculpe, no meu quarto (the . . .) não funciona

Excuse me, in my room (the ...) isn't working/is out of order

or use:

Desculpe, no meu quarto (the ...) está pifado/a

Excuse me, in my room (the . . .) is out of order/is broken (down)

- 1 The blind isn't working/the TV is broken.
- 2 The telephone is broken/the radio is broken/the shower isn't working.
- 3 The toilet isn't working/the light isn't working.

o toalete toilet o telefone phone a persiana blind

o televisor TV o rádio radio

How much can you remember?

1 How do you say:

1 I'd like to reserve a double room with breakfast included for six nights.

2 Give me your phone number. Not at all.

3 I've lost my wallet, keys, passport and credit cards.

4 They reserved a twin-bedded room with shower.

2 True or false?

sem banheira = with shower um quarto de casal = a single room

vire à direita = continue straight on no fim desta rua = behind this park

3 Match up the correct English verb to its Portuguese partner then give the first person singular preterite tense of each.

to reserve confirmar (eu confirmei)

to cross virar
to follow subir
to turn atravessar
to go up seguir
to confirm reservar

- 4 Can you remember how to say (using ir + infinitive):
- 1 They are going to cross the road
- 2 I am going to reserve a room
- 3 She is going to turn to the left

5 How would you translate:

Can you tell me how to get to the bank/post office/railway station/library/bus station?

- 6 Give two ways in Portuguese to get someone's attention
- 7 Can you remember how to say in Portuguese: underneath, behind, on top of, next to, far from, beside, near to, to the right of, at the side of
- 8 Do you know what the following questions mean?
- 1 Há um hotel aqui perto?
- 2 Pode me dizer onde fica o teatro?
- 3 Onde é o minimercado?
- 4 Onde ficam os correios?
- 9 True or false?

felizmente = unfortunately

encontrar = to lose avião = car reservar = to find

que azar! = That's fine!
quinze dias = two months

- 10 Name five things you might find in a hotel room
- 11 Read the following dialogue and answer the questions in English

Manuel: Faz favor! Podia me dizer onde é o Hotel Conti-

nental?

O POLICIAL: Com certeza. O senhor atravesse esta avenida, siga por aquela rua ali em frente, no fim da rua vire à sua esquerda e vê o hotel muito perto à sua direita. Mas, o Hotel Marisol é ainda mais perto, deste lado da

avenida.

Manuel: Muito obrigado. O Hotel Marisol será mais caro? O POLICIAL: Não. Não é. O preço é o mesmo, mais ou menos.

80

Vocabulary

com certeza of course

aquela rua ali em frente that road there in front

vê you will seemuito perto very close by

ainda mais perto even closer

será mais caro? will it be more expensive?

o preço é o mesmo the price is the same

mais ou menos more or less o policial (Pt o polícia) policeman

1 What is Manuel looking for?

2 What directions is he given and by whom?

3 What alternative is suggested?

4 What is Manuel concerned about in his last question?

5 Posso ver . . .?

Can I see ...?

In this lesson you will learn about:

· comparing things

- how to select, request and pay for things
- demonstratives
- · sizes, quantities, weights and colours

Listen to or read the following dialogues where Helena is in a shoe-shop (uma sapataria) in Campo Grande in Brazil looking for just the right pair of shoes (os sapatos) and Clara visits Barra Shopping Centre in Rio in search of a dress (um vestido).

Dialogue 1 Queria comprar . . .

Helena: Boa tarde. Queria comprar um par de sapatos

marrons. Vi uns na vitrina1 . . .

A VENDEDORA: Aqueles ali?

Helena: Não, esses aí entre as sandálias vermelhas e as

botas pretas.

A VENDEDORA: Que número calça? HELENA: Calço trinta e seis.

A VENDEDORA: Quer experimentar? Ah, ficam-lhe bem!

Helena: Estes são bonitos mas estão um pouco grandes.

Preciso de um tamanho abaixo ... ah, estes servem bem. Fico com eles. Posso pagar com

cartão de crédito?

in the window.

Saleslady: Those ones there?

HELENA: No, those ones there between the red sandals and

the black boots.

SALESLADY: What size do you take?

HELENA: I take a 36.

Saleslady: Do you want to try them on? Ah, they really suit

you.

Helena: These are nice but they are a bit big. I need a

smaller size . . . ah, these will do nicely. I'll take

them. Can I pay by credit card?

Vocabulary

Quanto custa/custam? How much is it/are they?

Que número calça? What (shoe-) size do you take?

usar/levarto wear (clothes)usar/calçarto wear (shoes)

o número/ a medida/ o tamanho size

um tamanho abaixoa smaller sizeum tamanho acimaa larger size

pagar com cartão de crédito to pay by credit card

The verbs ver and poder

Ver ('to see')

Present indicative tense

vejo vês vê vemos vêem I see, you see, etc.

Preterite tense

vi viste viu vimos viram I saw, you saw, etc.

Poder ('to be able/can')

Present indicative tense

posso podes pode podemos podem I can, you can, etc.

Preterite tense

pude pudeste pôde pudemos puderam I could, you could, etc.

Exercise 1

Here are some signs you might see in various shops. Can you decipher what they mean with the help of the list in English below?

saldos!/liquidação!	preços baixos	caixa
aberto	saída	entrada livre
FECHADO	ICM ² incluído	

exit	low prices	VAT included
sale!	come in and browse	closed
cash desk	open	

² IVA (Pt) 'VAT'

Dialogue 2 Posso ver alguns vestidos?

CLARA: Posso ver alguns vestidos por favor? Ah não, não

gosto nada destes vestidos!

A VENDEDORA: Aqui tem outros mais modernos e noutras cores,

verde, amarelo, azul . . .

CLARA: Ai, não sei . . . Ah sim, gosto mais destes vestidos.

Prefiro o amarelo. Posso prová-lo?

A VENDEDORA: Com certeza. Qual é o tamanho da senhora?

O número 38? Bem, aqui é a cabine de provas.

CLARA: Acho que é uma graça e o preço é só quinze

reais? É mesmo uma pechincha! Pago com cheque, está bem? Onde fica a caixa por favor?

CLARA: Can I see some dresses please? Oh no, I don't

like these at all.

¹ a montra (Pt) 'window'

Saleslady: We have other more modern ones here and in

other colours, green, yellow, blue . . .

CLARA: I don't know! Oh yes, I like these dresses much more. I prefer the yellow one. Can I try it on?

Yes of course. What size are you? 38? Here is the

Saleslady: Yes of course. fitting room.

CLARA: I think it's really nice and the price is only 15

reais? It's a real bargain! I'm paying by cheque,

is that OK? Where's the cash desk please?

Vocabulary

Ai, não sei ... uma pechincha Oh, I don't know a bargain/a snip

pagar com cheque Fica-me bem to pay by cheque It really suits me

Ficam-me bem Não me fica bem They really suit me It doesn't really suit me

Não me ficam bem

They don't really suit me

É uma graça! Estou só vendo It's nice/cute!
I'm just looking

Expressing strong dislike

detesto ...

I hate ...

Note that in Portuguese a double negative is possible:

Não gosto nada de ... I don't like ... at all/in any way

Expressing 'extremely' and 'really'

This is achieved by adding the suffix -issimo (which agrees in number and gender with the root of an adjective):

Este colar é lindíssimo

This necklace is really beautiful

Esses carros são caríssimos

These cars are extremely expensive

Exercise 2

You want to buy a pair of black espadrilles (as alparcatas). Fill in your part of the dialogue using the previous dialogues as a guide.

You: (a pair of (um par de) black espadrilles please)

A VENDEDORA: Que número calça?

You: (37)

A VENDEDORA: Quer experimentar?

You: (Yes please. They are a bit big. Do you have

... (Tem ...?) a smaller size?)

A VENDEDORA: Estas são um tamanho abaixo.

You: (Thanks. I like these ... I'll take them. How

much are they? Can I pay by cheque?)

Making comparisons

Study the following examples:

1 Esta camisa é *mais* colorida This shirt is more colourful

2 Este vestido é *menos* colorido This dress is less colourful

3 Esta blusa é mais cara do que aquela
This blouse is more expensive than that one

4 Este toca-discos³ **é** *menos* **sofisticado** *do que* **aquele** This record-player is *less* sophisticated *than* that one

5 Esta roupa é a mais prática (of all the clothes) These clothes are the most practical

6 Este café é *tão* forte *como* este This coffee is *as* strong *as* this one

7 Ele tem tantas camisetas⁴ como o seu irmão He has as many T-shirts as his brother

4 a T-shirt (Pt) T-shirt

³ o gira-discos (Pt) record-player

Exercise 3

Can you create sentences like the ones above? The first one is done for you:

1 This pullover is cheaper than this one. Este pulôver é mais barato do que este.

2 This train is quicker than this one.

3 This book is more interesting than this one.

4 These shoes are more modern than these ones.

barata rápido interessante modernos cheap quick interesting modern

Demonstratives

This (one here) That (one there) That (one over there)
These (ones here) Those (ones there) Those (ones over there)

este (ms)	esse	aquele	envelope
esta (fs)	essa	aquela	cadeira
estes (mpl)	esses	aqueles	discos
estas (fpl)	essas	aquelas	luvas
isto	isso	aquilo	neuter forms (invariable)

The above demonstratives can be used on their own: (Quais is the plural of qual)

Which (records) are you playing?

Quais (discos) toca?

I'm playing these (ones)

Toco estes

'Here', 'there', 'over there'

If you want to indicate where someone or something is, you use these words:

aqui here

aí there

lá over there

ali over there

cá here

Contractions

All the demonstrative forms above contract with both **em** and **de**. For example:

em + este esta estes estas \rightarrow neste nesta nestes nestas in this/in these, on this/on these

de + aquilo → daquilo of/from that

See also the section on 'contractions' in Lesson 4.

Exercise 4

Can you fill in the missing words in the sentences below? Choose from:

como tão mais . . . do . . . que mais . . . do

1 Estes sapatos são _____ caros ____ estes

2 Ela é tão alta _____ o seu pai

3 O trem é _____ rápido ____ que o ônibus

4 Ele é _____ inteligente como o seu irmão

o trem (Pt comboio) train o ônibus (Pt autocarro) bus

Irregular comparatives and superlatives

muito \rightarrow mais \rightarrow o maisverymorethe mostpouco \rightarrow menos \rightarrow o menoslittlelessthe least

grande	\rightarrow	maior	\rightarrow	o maior
big		bigger		the biggest
pequeno	\rightarrow	menor ⁵	\rightarrow	o menor
small		smaller		the smallest
mau/mal	\rightarrow	pior	\rightarrow	o pior
bad		worse		the worst
bom/bem	\rightarrow	melhor	\rightarrow	o melhor
good		better		the best

5 in Portugal, mais pequeno ('smaller') can replace menor

Certain of these adjectives have very different forms in the feminine:

 $mau \rightarrow m\acute{a}$ plurals: maus (mpl), más (fpl) bom \rightarrow boa plurals: bons (mpl), boas (fpl)

Exercise 5

Can you give the opposites of these words?

pouco mais grande maior ótimo

Exercise 6

Some friends have been shopping for new clothes. Can you guess what they have bought? (Vocabulary is given at the end of the lesson.)



uma jaqueta

uma camiseta

um jeans⁶

umas meias

uns tênis



um terno⁷

uma camisa

uma gravata

umas luvas

uns sapatos

um chapéu

uma blusa

uma saia

umas botas



uma blusa de malha/um suéter8

um cachecol

umas calças

uns mocassins

⁶ uns jeans (Pt) 'jeans'

⁷ o fato (Pt) 'suit'

⁸ a camisola (Pt) 'sweater'

Exercise 7

Can you decipher what these colours are in Portuguese? (See if you are right at the end of the lesson.)

The sun is amarelo Grass is verde Liquorice is preto The sea is azul

The danger sign is vermelho Milk is branco The squirrel is cinzento Chocolate is marrom

Shades

light brown marrom claro dark brown marrom escuro

As normal, colours agree in gender and number with the thing referred to:

black trousers (fpl) as calças pretas the red umbrella (ms) o guarda-chuva vermelho

What is it made from? (É feito/a de . . .?)

o algodão cotton a seda silk o couro leather a lã wool

o linho linen

Examples

uma malha de algodão a cotton sweat-shirt é feita de algodão it is made of cotton

Exercise 8

Now it is your turn to ask for the following items. Use:

Pode me mostrar? Can you show me?

Can I see? Posso ver? I'd like ... Desejo/queria ...

1 a green sweater

2 a cotton T-shirt

3 a pair of black shoes

4 a light-green blouse

5 a grey silk tie

Places to shop

shopping centre o centro comercial o supermercado supermarket o minimercado minimarket a padaria baker's (shop) a mercearia grocer's (shop) a peixaria fish shop

o açougue (Pt o talho) butcher's (shop)

a frutaria fruit shop

a tabacaria/charutaria tobacconist's (shop) a loja de ferragens hardware shop a banca de jornais newspaper stand

a loja de móveis usados second-hand furniture shop

Exercise 9

Consult your dictionary for the following. You should already know some of the words:

chemist's (shop), snack-bar, bookshop, stationer's, hairdresser, laundrette, post office

Exercise 10

Read the following passage, answer the questions which follow, then translate it into English.

Queria comprar uma camisa por favor. Tem outras cores? Prefiro a vermelha. O meu tamanho é guarenta. Onde é a cabine de provas? O preço é muito bom. Posso pagar com cheque?

1 What item of clothing does the person want to buy?

2 Which particular colour does s/he prefer?

3 What information does s/he give to the shop assistant?

4 What two questions does s/he ask the shop assistant and what comment does s/he make about the price?

Exercise 11

Try to match up the correct pairs of shops in the box below.

baker's (shop)	a peixaria
tobacconist's (shop)	o minimercado
minimarket	a mercearia
butcher's (shop)	a padaria
fish shop	a tabacaria
grocer's (shop)	o açougue

Exercise 12

Can you match up the types of things you might buy in the righthand column with the list of shops on the left?

a tabacaria	a fruta
a farmácia	o pão
a frutaria	os móveis de¹0 segunda mão
a livraria	os cigarros
o correio	os remédios
a padaria	os livros
a loja de móveis usados	os selos

¹⁰ os móveis em segunda mão (Pt)

Dialogue 3 Na frutaria 🖸

Oue deseja, minha senhora? O VENDEDOR:

Dê-me três quilos de batatas e seis bananas. Tem ANA:

alhos? Quatro, por favor, e dois quilos e meio

de cebolas e um molho de salsa também.

What would you like, madam? O VENDEDOR:

Give me three kilos of potatoes and six bananas. ANA:

Do you have garlic? Four, please, and 21/2 kilos of

onions and a bunch of parsley too.

Dialogue 4 Na mercearia D

Queria uma dúzia de pãezinhos por favor e ANA:

um pão grande. Também duzentos gramas de presunto e um pouquinho de queijo. Chega! E

um pacote de manteiga.

Pode ser um pacote de meio quilo? O VENDEDOR:

Pode ser. E uma caixa de fósforos, uma lata de ANA:

sardinhas, um pacote de café. Tem descafeinado? ... Um pacote de açúcar e uma garrafa de vinho

branco. Quanto é tudo?

I'd like a dozen rolls please and a large loaf. Also ANA:

200 grammes of presunto and a little bit of cheese.

That'll do! And a packet of butter.

Is a half-kilo packet OK? SHOPKEEPER:

That's fine and a box of matches, a tin of sardines, ANA:

a packet of coffee. Do you have decaffeinated? ... A packet of sugar and a bottle of white wine.

How much is that in all?

Quantities

um quilo de a kilo of meio quilo de ½ kilo of dois quilos de 2 kilos of três quilos e meio de 3½ kilos of

um litro de a litre of meio litro de 1/2 litre of quatro litros de 4 litres of um quarto de litro de ¼ litre of uma fatia de a slice of 250 gramas de approx. ½ pound of uma dúzia de a dozen a portion of uma porção de um pouquinho de a little bit of um pouco de a little bit of uma garrafa de a bottle of um pacote de a packet of uma lata de a tin of uma caixa de a box of um tubo de a tube of um pote (Pt boião) de a jar of

Exercise 13

Can you remember how to ask for the following items in Portuguese? The first has been done for you. Use **Dê-me**, **pode me dar** or **queria** where appropriate:

1 I'd like 2 kilos of bananas. Queria dois quilos de bananas.

- 2 A packet of butter and a packet of coffee
- 3 Half a litre of wine
- 4 Can I have 200 grammes of cheese?
- 5 3½ kilos of potatoes
- 6 I'd like 2 kilos of onions.
- 7 A tube of toothpaste/I'd like some soap.
- 8 Give me 4 kilos of sugar.

a pasta de dentes toothpaste o sabão soap

Tudo and todo

Tudo, which means 'everything', is invariable:

Quanto é tudo? How much is it? (i.e. everything)

Todo, which means 'all/every', agrees with the noun in gender and number:

toda a gente (Pt)everyonetodo (o) mundoeveryonetodos os diasevery day

Translating 'some', 'any' and 'none'

1 In general:

algum (ms)algum dinheirosome/any moneyalguma (fs)alguma dificuldadesome difficultyalguns (mpl)alguns copossome glassesalgumas (fpl)algumas situaçõessome situations

Você tem alguma dúvida?

Do you have any doubt?

2 If a sentence is in the negative, you use:

nenhum (ms) nenhuns (mpl) none/not any

nenhuma (fs) nenhumas (fpl)

Ela não tem nenhuma dúvida

She doesn't have any doubt at all

3 The plural forms of the indefinite article – uns, umas – also express 'some' but their use in this respect is more specifically related to quantity:

umas idéias (Pt ideias) maravilhosas

some (i.e. a few/a certain number of) great ideas

uns dicionários medíocres

some mediocre dictionaries

Uns or **umas** before a number = 'approximately':

uns quinze anos approximately fifteen years old

Note that in Portuguese 'some' and 'any' are often omitted where they would be used in English:

Quer frango?

Do you want some chicken?

Tenho sal I have some salt

O hotel não tem quartos vagos

The hotel does not have any vacancies

Someone/no one

alguém someone ninguém no one

These are both invariable:

Ninguém chegou No one arrived

How much can you remember?

- 1 Can you translate these:
- 1 Can I pay by credit card?
- 2 What size do you take?
- 3 They suit you; it suits me
- 4 I need a bigger size
- 5 I'll take them
- 6 Can I try it on? It's a real bargain
- **2** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate demonstrative form (this/that/these/those):
- 1 Posso experimentar ... terno?

Can I try on this suit?

2 ... flores são lindas

Those flowers (over there) are lovely

3 Ele conhece ... homem

He knows this man

4 ... meninas têm muita bagagem

These girls have a lot of luggage

5 O que é ...?

What is this?

- 3 Fill in the missing comparative (mais/menos/tão, etc.)
- 1 Ele é ... alto como o seu pai

He is as tall as his father

2 O trem é ... rápido do que o ônibus

The train is quicker than the bus

3 Esta cidade tem ... trânsito do que aquela

This city has less traffic than that one

4 Este filme é bom mas esse é

This film is good but that one is the best

4 Read the following passage and see if you can answer the questions which follow:

A Manuela quer comprar um vestido. Ela prova um vestido que lhe ficou muito grande. Depois, decide comprar um par de sapatos de salto alto e uma bolsa. Compra ambos e vai-se embora.

- 1 What is Manuela looking for?
- 2 What is wrong with the one she tries on?
- 3 What does she decide to do instead?

Vocabulary

que lhe ficou muito grande which was much too big for her it was much too big for her it was much too big for her she decide to buy a pair of high heeled shoes a handbag both she goes away/she leaves

A roupa *clothing*

a jaqueta	jacket	as sandálias	sandals
a camiseta	T-shirt	os mocassins	moccasins
o casaco	coat	as botas	boots
um jeans	jeans	os sapatos	shoes
as meias	socks	o chapéu	hat
o terno	suit	o cachecol	scarf
a camisa	shirt	as luvas	gloves
a blusa	blouse	a gravata	tie
a saia	skirt	o cinto	belt
o suéter	jumper	a blusa de malha	sweat-shirt
as calças	trousers	os tênis	trainers

As cores *colours*

verde	green	cinzento	grey
azul	blue	roxo	purple
branco	white	cor-de-rosa	pink
amarelo	yellow	cor-de-ouro/dourado	gold/golden
preto	black	cor-de-prata/prateado	silver
vermelho/encarnad	lo red	marrom (Pt castanho)	brown

6 Uma passagem de ida para Ouro Prêto

A single to Ouro Prêto

In this lesson you will learn about:

- different types of transport
- · asking for a ticket on a bus
- the future indicative tense
- hiring a car, buying petrol and dealing with basic car problems

Situation 1 No aeroporto

Sr Costa is travelling to New York (Nova Iorque). As his memory is not too good he has made a list of what he must do once he reaches the airport terminal (o terminal) in order to catch his flight (o vôo).

Preciso de ...

verificar o horário de partidas ir ao check-in entregar a bagagem mostrar o passaporte e a passagem pedir um lugar de não-fumantes receber um cartão de embarque ir ao controle de passaportes visitar o duty-free esperar na sala de espera e, finalmente, ir ao portão de embarque número . . .

Exercise 1

Can you follow Sr Costa's plan of action? Here are the verbs used:

verificar	to check	pedir	to ask for
ir	to go	receber	to get
entregar	to hand over	visitar	to visit
mostrar	to show	esperar	to wait

and some vocabulary:

partidas (fpl), chegadas (fpl)	departures/arrivals
passagem (f)	ticket
lugar de não-fumantes (m)	a no-smoking seat
cartão de embarque (m)	boarding card
sala de espera (f)	departure lounge
portão de embarque (número) (m)	gate (number)

Now write down in English what Sr Costa plans to do.

Exercise 2

Can you remember what the following are in Portuguese?

duty-free, boarding card, departure board, non-smoking, passport control, departure lounge, departure gate

The future indicative tense

There are various ways of expressing futurity in Portuguese:

1 By using part of the verb ir + infinitive (you have already seen this in Lesson 4), which implies a degree of intention or certainty:

We are going to visit the coast Vamos visitar o litoral

2 By using the present indicative tense

I'll buy the present today Compro o presente hoje

3 By using the verb haver de + infinitive. Although this is less widely used than the above methods, it implies a greater degree of intention or future obligation:

Hei de ir ao Brasil Eles hão de assinar o cheque They shall sign the cheque

I intend to go to Brazil

4 By using the future indicative tense

Forming the future indicative

With the exceptions given below, the following endings are added to the infinitive of any verb:

-ei -ás -á -emos -ão

Thus: **falarei** I shall talk ele decidirá he will decide

The exceptions to this rule are the following three verbs, of which the stem changes slightly:

fazer (to do) I shall do/make *far*ei (to say/tell) I shall say/tell dizer *dir*ei I shall bring trazer (to bring) *trar*ei

It is more common to use methods 1 and 2 above to express futurity, especially in everyday speech. Note that the future tense of ser in the third person singular is used to express 'I wonder if . . .?'

Será que ...? (lit.:) Will it be that ...?

Exercise 3

Go back to Sr Costa's list of things to do. How would you describe his actions in the future, using the future indicative?

- 1 Ele verificará o horário de partidas . . ., etc.
- 2 He will go to the check-in desk.
- 3 He will go to passport control.
- 4 He will visit the duty-free shop.

Dialogue 1 Não compreendi bem 🚥

Paulo is meeting a friend at the airport but has difficulty understanding the announcement over the public-address system (o altofalante). He asks when the plane (o avião) is going to land (aterrizar)

Faz favor. Não compreendi bem o que disse o Paulo:

alto-falante. Oue vôo anunciam? A que horas

chegará o vôo de Heathrow, Londres?

A hora de chegada será às duas e meia. Está O FUNCIONÁRIO:

com meia hora de atraso.

Oue chatice! Há sempre um atraso. PAULO

Vocabulary

(anunciar) they announce to announce anunciam a hora de chegada arrival time to arrive chegar always nuisance sempre a chatice

There's a delay of ... Está com (meia hora) de atraso

Exercise 4a

Part of the translation of Dialogue 1 is given below. Some of the words, however, are missing. Can you fill them in?

Paulo:

... me, I didn't catch what came over the ... What ... are they announcing? What ... will the

... from Heathrow ...?

Exercise 4b

Here are three things you might expect an air hostess, aeromoça,1 to say during a flight:

Façam favor de apertar os cintos de segurança! Ouerem refrescos e bebidas alcoólicas? Querem comprar cigarros, perfumes, loção após-barba?

Now try to fill in the missing words in Portuguese and discover what she is saying:

Façam favor de (to fasten) os (safety belts)! Querem (refreshments) e (alcoholic beverages)? Querem (to buy) (cigarettes), perfumes, (after-shave lotion)?

Dialogue 2 No Controle de Passaportes ••

Mostre-me o seu passaporte. Qual é a sua O Funcionário:

nacionalidade?

Aqui está. Sou italiano. RICARDO:

Quanto tempo vai ficar no Brasil? O Funcionário:

Tenciono ficar três semanas. RICARDO:

O Funcionário: Faz favor de passar à Alfândega.

Vocabulary

mostre-me show me aqui está here it is

Qual é a sua nacionalidade? What nationality are you?

Quanto tempo vai ficar? How long are you going to stay?

tenciono ficar I intend to stay

Faz favor de passar à Alfândega Please go through to Customs

Exercise 5

Q: ___

Which questions fit these responses?

A: Sou inglês. Q: ____

A: Aqui está.

A: Vou ficar dois meses.

Dialogue 3 Na Alfândega 🖸

The passengers (os passageiros) collect their luggage from baggage reclaim (a reclamação de bagagem) and go through customs

Bom dia. Tem alguma coisa a declarar? O OFICIAL:

ANA: Não, não tenho nada a declarar.

O OFICIAL: Que bagagem tem?

Só tenho duas malas e esta bolsa de viagem. ANA:

O OFICIAL: A senhora pode seguir. Bom dia.

¹ a hospedeira (Pt) 'air-hostess'; a moça 'girl, young woman'

Vocabulary

alguma coisa a declarar

something to declare

só tenho ...

I've only got ...

malas (fpl)

suitcases

pode seguir

you can go on

Exercise 6

Read this short passage, try to answer in English the questions which follow, then translate the passage into English:

Vou viajar ao Canadá para visitar os meus pais. O vôo partirá de Londres às nove e meia e durará mais de cinco horas. Antes de embarcar tenho de ir ao check-in e ao controle de passaportes. Confesso que não gosto nada de voar, mas, neste caso, é preciso!

Vocabulary

vou viajar neste caso I'm going to travel in this case

will leave partirá é preciso it's necessary durará will last

my parents os meus pais antes de embarcar before boarding

confesso I have to admit

- 1 What does the writer intend to do? (first sentence)
- 2 When does the flight leave? How long is the journey?
- 3 What does the writer have to do before boarding?
- 4 The writer loves flying. True or false?

Past participles

We have already seen some of these in action in the previous lesson, representing signs seen in shops, etc. For example:

fechado closed

saída exit entrada entrance

To form these, take off the -ar, -er or -ir ending of an infinitive:

-ar verbs

-er verbs

-ir verbs

mandar 'to send' mand/ + ado

ter 'to have' t/ + ido

partir 'to leave' part/ + ido

past participle mandado

past participle tido

past participle partido

There are exceptions:

open (from abrir – to open) aberto said (from dizer - to say) dito

made/done (from fazer - to do/make) feito

posto put (from por - to put) seen (from ver - to see) visto vindo came (from vir – to come)

escrito written (from escrever - to write) spent (from gastar - to spend) gasto earned (from ganhar - to earn) ganho

killed (from matar - to kill) morto

The future perfect tense

This is formed by the future tense of ter + past participle:

She will have eaten the food = Terá comido a comida We shall have seen the film = Teremos visto o filme

Exercise 7

A mulher² (the wife) of Sr Costa imagines the progress of her husband on his return journey (a volta or o regresso) from New York. Can you help her by following the example below?

He will have (landed - aterrizar) Terá aterrizado

He will have (gone $-i\mathbf{r}$) to passport control

He will have (reclaimed - reclamar) his luggage

He will have (gone through - passar) customs

He will have (said - dizer) that he has nothing to declare

He will have (caught - apanhar) a taxi

Signs Not all signs use the past participle; some use the infinitive:

puxar pull

não fumar no smoking

² also, a esposa 'wife'

Exercise 8

Can you match the following signs with their equivalent in English?

proibido estacionar ocupado empurrar cancelado push CANCELLED engaged NO WAITING

Dialogue 4 Na estação Rodoviária³

••

Teresa: Faz favor. Quando é o próximo ônibus4 para Ouro

Prêto?

Funcionário: Amanhã de manhã às 7.30. É um executivo.

TERESA: Queria uma ida e volta, por favor. De que plata-

forma⁵ sai o ônibus?

Funcionário: Da plataforma quatro. Aqui está a passagem6 da se-

nhora...e o troco.... Quer uma tabela de horário?

3 a estação dos autocarros (Pt) 'bus station'

4 o autocarro (Pt) 'bus'5 a linha (Pt) 'platform'

6 o bilhete (Pt) 'fare/ticket'

Vocabulary

o próximo ônibus para the next bus for tomorrow morning é um executivo it's an executive coach é um super luxo it's a first class coach

uma ida e volta a return (uma ida single)

de que plataforma sai o ônibus? which platform does the bus leave from?

a passagem e o troco the ticket and the change

uma tabela de horário timetable

Expressing 'to miss'

To miss a train/bus, etc. = **perder** ('to lose'):

Perdi o meu trem I missed my train

To miss a person/place, etc. = sentir falta de or ter saudades de:

Tenho saudades do Brasil
Sinto falta dele

I miss Brazil
I miss him

Exercise 9

Can you say in Portuguese:

When is the next train for Santos? How much is a return? I'd like a timetable please. We would like three singles to Bauru. What platform does the train leave from?

Exercise 10

Look at the useful information below. Try to work out what the symbols mean and answer the following questions:



- 1 How would you translate serviço sanitário?
- 2 What is the name of the train station?
- 3 Which facilities are ahead by: a) 500m b) 1000m?
- 4 Which four types of transport are illustrated above?

Vocabulary

guiaguideabastecimentofilling stationserviço mecânicogarage serviceponto de paradabus stopárea de campismocamping sitepronto socorrofirst aid

Other types of transport

Exercise 11

Below are some drawings of different means of transport labelled in Portuguese. Can you put the correct English translation with each drawing?

Ando de ... I go by ... (from andar 'to walk')





de carro

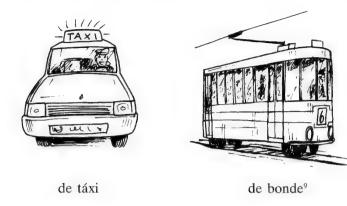
de metrô7





de ônibus8

a pé



7 de metro (Pt) 'by underground'

8 de autocarro (Pt) 'by bus'

9 de eléctrico (Pt) 'by tram'

o ponto de táxis 'taxi rank' (a praça de táxis Pt)

by underground by taxi by bus by car on foot by tram

To ask to go somewhere, use para (to/for) + place:

Para Búzios faz favor/a Pousada do Arco-Íris, etc.

Using por **and** para

Both **por** and **para** mean 'for' but there are subtle differences: **Para** = purpose:

I'd like a car for the weekend (i.e. for the purpose of driving it)

Oueria um carro para o fim de semana

Por = because of:

Do I have to pay for the mileage? (i.e. because of the mileage)

Tenho de pagar pela quilometragem?

If followed by the definite article, por contracts:

Example

Obrigado pela carona

Thanks for the lift

Por also expresses 'by/through/for' (projected time):

Anda pela cidade

He walks through the city

O livro foi escrito por Pessoa

The book was written by Pessoa

Vamos por quinze dias

We are going for a fortnight

Expressing 'to'

Para is used to imply long distance and a long stay:

Vou para Portugal

I'm going to Portugal

A implies a short distance and short duration:

Vou a Manaus

I'm going to Manaus

Exercise 12

On the following page is a leaflet advertising car-hire rates. Read it and see if you can answer these questions:

- 1 Can you hire a four-door car? How much is it for seven days?
- 2 What does the daily rate include?
- 3 Is there a minimum age for drivers?
- 4 Which documents are required?
- 5 Does the price include petrol consumption?



Tarifas ECONOMIA E QUALIDADE

Grupo	Modelo	Diaria c/150 km	km extra	Semana km livre
8	VW Gol 1000	55,00	0,19	330,00
A	Mille - Corsa - Hobby	64,00	0,23	384,00
В	Uno Mille ELX	73,00	0,28	438,00
C	Uno Mille ELX c/ ar	98,00	0,32	588,00
D	Tipo - Monza 4 p. c/ ar	145,00	0,46	870,00

Promoções: Além destas ofertas, há sempre uma promoção especial para o seu dia-a-dia ou fim-de-semana. A Primal tem a melhor tarifa para seu caso.

ALUGAR UM CARRO NA PRIMAL É FÁCIL E ECONÔMICO.

Os preços incluem diária e seguro contra danos de colisão. A partir de seis dias a quilometragem é livre de cobrança adicional. O(s) motorista(s) deverá(ão) ter mais de 24 anos, carteira de habilitação emitida há mais de dois anos, carteira de identidade e cartão de crédito. A taxa municipal (ISS = 5%) e o combustível não estão incluídos no valor da diária. Seguro de acidentes pessoais e assistência em viagem, mediante pequena taxa adicional.

Vocabulary

a tarifa/os preços incluem tipo de carro/modelo portas c/ar condicionado quilômetro extra ISS motorista deverá ter ma

motorista deverá ter mais de 24 anos assistência em viagem seguro de acidentes pessoais carteira de habilitação emitida há mais de 2 anos rate/prices
include
make of car
doors
with air conditioning
extra mileage
tax on services
driver must be 24 and over
breakdown assistance
personal accident insurance
driving licence issued more
than 2 years ago

a carteira de motorista/habilitação a carta de condução seguro contra todos os riscos driving licence (Pt) driving licence comprehensive insurance

Speed Limits in Brazil:

60 km/hour in towns

80 km/hour on ordinary roads

100 km/hour on motorways

Exercise 13

What do you think these road signs mean?

semáforos dê prioridade Obras sentido único desvio RODOVIA pedestres limite de velocidade

To help you, here are the English equivalents:

diversion	traffic lights	pedestrians
roadworks	motorway	one-way street
give way	speed limit	

Situation 2 No posto de gasolina

Listen to what these people are saying:

1 Dez reais de diesel, por favor!

2 Queria dez litros de gasolina aditivada.

3 Faz favor de verificar o óleo.

4 Pode verificar a pressão dos pneus?

5 Preciso de mais água no radiador.

6 Pode encher por favor!

Vocabulary

posto de gasolina gasolina (f) gasolina comum gasolina aditivada sem chumbo (Pt) diesel (m) gas/petrol station gas/petrol two-star petrol with additives/four-star petrol unleaded diesel óleo (m)

oil

Tenho um furo (num pneu). A pressão dos pneus

I've got a puncture. the tyre pressure

radiador (m) tanque (m) radiator petrol tank

Pode encher por favor!

Can you fill it up please!

(Petrol in Brazil is lead free since 1992. Brazilian petrol is unique in the world as its composition contains 'ethanol'.)

Exercise 14

Using the vocabulary above as a guide, can you discover what the people in Situation 2 are asking for?

Exercise 15

Now it is your turn to speak. Say:

you would like your oil checked and also the tyre pressure checked. You need more water in the radiator as well as fifteen reais of petrol. You also think you have a puncture in a tyre.

Vocabulary

uma pane/uma avariaa breakdownO meu carro está quebradoMy car is broken downO meu carro está pifadoMy car is broken downO/A ... não funcionaThe ... isn't workingconsertarto repairum consertoa repair

um conserto a repair
o pisca-pisca indicator
o volante steering wheel
o limpador de pára-brisa windscreen wiper

o acclerador accelerator
a embreagem clutch
o freio brake (foot)
o freio de mão handbrake
o câmbio de velocidades gearstick

How much can you remember?

- 1 Can you translate:
- 1 Twelve reais of two-star petrol please
- 2 Where is passport control?
- 3 What flight are they announcing?
- 4 When is the next train for ...?
- 5 I have nothing to declare
- **2** Give the past participles of:

comer, dar, ser, visitar, esperar, verificar

Give the irregular past participles of:

fazer, escrever, ver, pôr, dizer

- **3** What do these mean in Portuguese? ocupado, obras, empurrar, proibido estacionar, pedestres, desvio, dê prioridade
- 4 What responses would you give to these questions?
- 1 Ouer ida e volta?

(Say you want a single)

2 Qual é a sua nacionalidade?

(Say you are Spanish)

- 3 Quantos litros de gasolina deseja? (10 litres)
- **5** Are these true or false?

safety belt 1 a hora de chegada the air hostess 2 um atraso a no-smoking seat 3 a sala de espera the departure lounge 4 a aeromoça

arrival time 5 o cinto de segurança

6 um lugar de não-fumantes = a delay

7 Não me sinto bem

I don't feel well

In this lesson you will learn about:

- describing your daily routine
- using reflexive verbs
- using the imperfect tense
- · explaining minor ailments

Dialogue 1 A que horas se levanta?

One of the Brazilian football team O Flamengo describes part of his daily routine for a very inquisitive magazine (uma revista)

A REVISTA: A que horas se levanta? JORGE: Levanto-me às sete horas.

Onde se lava? A REVISTA:

JORGE: Lavo-me no banheiro.

A REVISTA: Onde se veste?

Visto-me no meu quarto. JORGE:

Onde se senta para tomar o café da manhã? A REVISTA:

Sento-me na cozinha, claro! JORGE: A que horas sai de casa? A REVISTA: Saio de casa às oito horas. JORGE:

A REVISTA: E depois?

Faço jogging por meia hora. JORGE:

1 Levanta-se às sete horas

2





3 _____







5 _____

6 _____





Exercise 1

With the aid of the drawings in Dialogue 1, can you answer the following?

- 1 What time does Jorge get up?
- 2 Where does he wash?
- 3 Where does he dress?
- 4 Where does he sit down to have breakfast?
- 5 What does he do next?
- 6 What do you think Jorge is doing in drawing 6?
- 7 Can you write the answers in Portuguese above the illustrations on page 116? The first is done for you.

Vocabulary

levantar-se	to get up	lavar-se	to wash
vestir-se	to get dressed	sentar-se	to sit
sair de casa	to leave home	fazer jogging	to jog

Exercise 2

Describe your day. Can you say:

What time you get up. What time you wash and where. Where you dress. What time you have breakfast and what you do after leaving home. (Vou ao meu trabalho I go to work/Vou à universidade I go to university/Vou às compras I go shopping/Fico em casa I stay at home.)

Formation of adverbs

These are generally formed by the addition of **-mente** to any feminine adjective:

masc. adjective	fem. adjective	adverb
choroso	chorosa	chorosamente
tearful	tearful	tearfully
duvidoso	duvidosa	duvidosamente
doubtful	doubtful	doubtfully

Where there is no change in the feminine adjective, for example in adjectives ending in -z or -e, simply add -mente:

feliz	feliz	felizmente
happy	happy	happily

Exercise 3

Can you form adverbs from the following:

invejoso	jealous	sereno	serene/placid
evidente	obvious	triunfante	triumphant

Reflexive verbs are so called because they join with a reflexive pronoun (myself, yourself, etc.) which refers back to the subject of the verb. For example:

(ele) lava-se	he washes (himself)
(1) 1	1 11 1 10 /1

(ela) chama-se she calls herself (her name is ...)

The present indicative tense of **sentar-se** ('to sit down - *lit*.: to sit oneself down') is as follows:

(eu)	sento-me	I sit down
(tu)	sentas-te	you sit down
(ele/ela)	senta-se	he, she sits down
(você/o sr/a sra)	senta-se	you sit down
(nós)	sentamo-nos1	we sit down
(eles/elas)	sentam-se	they sit down
vocês/os srs/as sras)	sentam-se	you sit down

 $^{1\,\,}$ -s at the end of the 1st person plural is omitted before the reflexive pronoun

The impersonal use of reflexive verbs, using se, is frequently seen in signs and notices:

(lit.: French speaks itself)

Vende-se For sale

(lit.: it sells itself)

Reflexive pronouns

me	myself	nos	ourselves
te	yourself	se	themselves
se	him/herself	se	yourselves
se	yourself		·

Exercise 4

Can you put Dialogue 1 into the preterite tense; for example:

Levantei-me às sete horas . . .

Expressing 'each other'

Reflexive pronouns can also be used in reciprocal actions to mean 'each other':

Encontraram-se na praça

They met (each other) in the square

To express 'to each other', to avoid ambiguity, **um ao outro** is added to the end of the sentence:

Deram um presente um ao outro

They gave each other a present

Um ao outro agrees with the people doing the giving:

um ao outro = two ms subjects or one m + one f subject

uma à outra = two fs subjects

uns aos outros = more than two mpl or a mixture of the

sexes

umas às outras = more than two fpl subjects

Position of reflexive pronouns

If you go back to Dialogue 1, you will see that sometimes the reflexive pronoun comes after the verb and sometimes before it. Reflexive pronouns are placed *before the verb* in the following contexts:

1 When a question is being asked:

Onde se lava?

Where do you have a wash?

2 When the statement is in the negative:

Não se lembrou de ir às compras

He/she/you didn't remember to go for the shopping

3 When certain adverbs – such as **já** (yet/already), **também** (also/too), **nunca** (never) or **sempre** (always) – precedes the verb:

Ela nunca se engana

She never makes a mistake

4 When a preposition precedes the verb:

Depois de me queixar o barulho parou

After I complained, the noise stopped

5 Following statements such as 'He said *that* . . .' or 'They believed *that* . . .':

Disseram que se esqueceram do número do telefone

They said they had forgotten the telephone number

Reflexive pronouns are placed after the verb in all other cases except one. Consider the following sentences:

Ele enganou-se
Ele se enganou
He was mistaken (Pt)
He was mistaken (Br)

The European Portuguese version follows the rules here; because there is no question/negative/adverb/preposition involved, the reflexive pronoun *follows* the verb. Brazilian Portuguese, however, places the pronoun *before* the verb. For this to happen, the sentence has to begin with **ele** as it is not possible to begin a sentence with a reflexive pronoun.

Exercise 5

Fill in the missing parts of the verb queixar-se ('to complain')

present indicative	preterite tense
(nós)nos	queixamo-nos
(eles/elas/vocês)se	queixaram
(tu) queixas	te
(ele/ela/você)se	se
(eu)me	queixei

Some common reflexive verbs

chamar-se	to be called
sentir-se	to feel (sorry, happy, etc.)
divertir-se	to enjoy oneself
zangar-se	to be annoyed/to get angry
sentar-se	to sit down
esquecer-se de	to forget

lembrar-se de	to remember
cansar-se de	to tire of
enganar-se	to be mistaken
queixar-se de	to complain
deitar-se	to lie down/go to bed
levantar-se	to get up

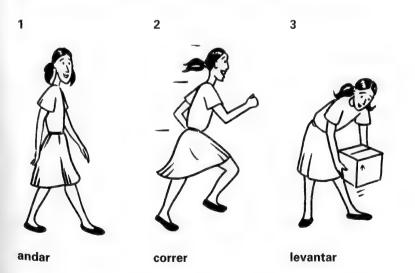
Exercise 6

Can you fill in the correct part of the verb and pronoun? Remember that sometimes the reflexive pronoun will come before the verb, sometimes after.

- 1 (Você) não (levantar-se) tarde You didn't get up late
- 2 (Nós) (sentar-se) na primeira fila We sat down in the first row
- 3 (Ela) disse que eles (deitar-se) às 11 horas She said that they went to bed at 11 o'clock
- 4 (Ela) também (esquecer-se) do encontro She also forgot about the meeting

Exercise 7a

Below are some actions that Joana performs in the course of a rather strenuous day. What do you think the actions are?



5





empurrar

puxar

Exercise 7b

Read the following passage, answer the questions which follow, then translate it into English:

O futebol é um esporte de bola no qual jogam duas equipes sobre um terreno retangular. O objetivo do jogo é introduzir a bola na rede adversária o maior número de vezes possível (marcar gols).

1 What is the object of the game?

2 How many teams does it involve and where is it played?

Vocabulary

um esporte de bolaa ball sportno qualin whichduas equipestwo teams

sobre on

introduzir to introduce

a rede net

o maior número de the largest number of

vezes times

(uma vez once/one time)

possível possible marcar gols to score goals

The imperfect indicative tense

To form this tense, remove the **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir** from the end of most infinitives and add these endings:

for -ar verbs
-ava
-avas
-ava
-ias
-ia
-ia
-iamos
-iamos
-iamos
-iam

Four verbs do not follow this pattern:

Ser (to be) era eras era éramos eram

Ter (to have)
Vir (to come)
Pôr (to put)
tinha tinhas tinha tínhamos tinham
vinhas vinha vínhamos vinham
punha punhas punha púnhamos punham

Using the imperfect tense

1 The imperfect is a past tense and expresses, for example: 'He was eating' or 'They were shopping'. Unlike the other past tense we have seen already (the preterite), the imperfect is used for actions in the past which are incomplete and which have no precise time limits:

Eu andava no parque

I was walking in the park

In this sentence the time when the walking began is unknown and the time when it ended is also unknown. Compare this to the preterite tense:

Andei a pé toda a manhã I walked all morning

Here, the walking has been confined to a particular period of time – all morning.

2 The imperfect also translates 'used to':

Eu comia naquele restaurante todos os sábados I ate (used to eat) in that restaurant every Saturday The verb **costumar** (to usually do) can also be used:

Costumava comer naquele restaurante

I used to eat in that restaurant

Exercise 8

Give the imperfect tense of the verbs in brackets and say what the sentences mean in English.

- 1 Nós (ler to read)
- 2 Ela (ir to go) ao teatro
- 3 Você (dirigir to drive) lentamente (slowly)
- 4 Eu (estudar to study)
- 5 Elas (ter to have) muitos problemas
- 3 The imperfect tense is used to describe the background to events, i.e. to describe what was going on when an event of some kind occurred (which is expressed by the preterite tense):

Chovia quando chegamos à praia

It was raining (description/background) when we arrived (event/action) at the beach

Ele dormia quando começou o terremoto²

He was sleeping (description/background) when the earthquake started (event/action)

Exercise 9

Can you say what the following three people were doing when the earthquake began?

- 1 ... quando o terremoto começou (pintar)
- 2 ... quando o terremoto começou (beber)
- 3 ... quando o terremoto começou (fazer a barba to shave)
- **4** The imperfect tense also frequently replaces the conditional tense (see the next section) in everyday speech:

He would like three tickets

Ele queria três passagens (not: Quereria três passagens)

The conditional tense

This tense expresses: 'I should', 'I would', etc. It is formed by adding to the infinitive (whether -ar, -er or -ir) the endings:

-ia -ias -ia -íamos -iam

As with the future tense, the three exceptions to this rule are:

 $\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{fazer} \rightarrow \textbf{far-ia} & I \text{ would/should do/make} \\ \textbf{dizer} \rightarrow \textbf{dir-ia} & I \text{ would/should say} \\ \textbf{trazer} \rightarrow \textbf{trar-ia} & I \text{ would/should bring} \\ \end{array}$

The conditional perfect tense

This is formed with the conditional of the verb **ter** + past participle to express: 'He would have liked', etc.:

Teríamos ficado muito cansados

We would have been very tired

Exercise 10

Give the 1st person plural (nós) of the conditional tense of the following verbs:

 $ir \rightarrow iríamos$ We would/should go

dar, ser, estar, ver, vir, ter, fazer

Ordinal numbers

primeiro/a	1st	décimo/a primeiro/a	11th
segundo/a	2nd	vigésimo/a	20th
terceiro/a	3rd	trigésimo/a	30th
quarto/a	4th	quadragésimo/a	40th
quinto/a	5th	quinquagésimo/a	50th
sexto/a	6th	sexagésimo/a	60th
sétimo/a	7th	septuagésimo/a	70th
oitavo/a	8th	octogésimo/a	80th
nono/a	9th	nonagésimo/a	90th
décimo/a	10th	centésimo/a	100th

² o terramoto (Pt) 'earthquake'

The numbers agree with what is spoken about:

a terceira casa à esquerda the third house on the left

o quinto andar the fourth floor os primeiros dois carros the first two cars

Situation 1 Na farmácia

ANA: Faz favor. Tem alguma coisa para a gripe alérgica? Dói-

me a garganta e não paro de espirrar . . .

Excuse me. Do you have something for hay fever? My

throat hurts and I can't stop sneezing . . .

Isabel: Tem algum remédio para queimadura de sol, por favor?

E também cortei o dedo. Tem esparadrapo e creme anti-

séptico?

Do you have something for sunburn please? And I've also cut my finger. Do you have sticking plaster and anti-

septic ointment?

José: Atchim! Estou resfriado e tenho dor de cabeça. Pode

ser a gripe?

Achoo! I have a cold and a headache. Could it be flu?

Situation 2 No hospital

Paulo: Penso que quebrei o braço e sinto-me tonto. Médico: Parece uma fratura. Vamos tirar um raio x.

Paulo: I think I have broken my arm and I feel dizzy. Doctor: It looks like a fracture. We'll take an x-ray.

Situation 3 No consultório

JORGE: Estou com dor de ouvido e não me sinto bem.

MÉDICO: Ah, tem uma infecção. Precisa de antibiótico. É alérgico

a algum medicamento? Está bem, esta receita é para

penicilina.

JORGE: I have a pain in my ear and I don't feel well.

DOCTOR: Ah, you have an infection. You need an antibiotic. Are

you allergic to any medicines? Fine, this prescription is

for penicillin.

Situation 4 No dentista

Manuela: Estou com dor de dentes.

Dentista: É preciso arrancar o dente, mas antes de tudo, vou

aplicar-lhe uma injeção ...

Manuela: I've got toothache.

DENTIST: The tooth will have to be extracted but, first of all, I'll

give you an injection ...

Exercise 11

Re-read Situations 1 to 4. Can you describe in Portuguese this person's ailments? The first one has been done for you:

1 I've got a headache

estou com dor de cabeça

2 I've got toothache

3 My throat is sore

4 My arm is sore

5 I've got a pain in my stomach

6 My back hurts

7 My knee is broken

Vocabulary

estar de ressaca

to have a hangover

um resfriado

machucar-se

uma picada (de mosquito/de marimbondo)

a cold

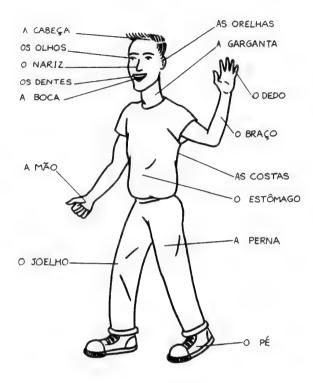
Onde é que dói?

a sting (mosquito/hornet)
Where does it hurt?
to hurt (oneself)
I don't feel well

Não me sinto bem Melhoras!

Get well soon!

(or Estimo as suas melhoras!)



In case of emergency . . .

For all emergencies in Rio de Janeiro dial the following numbers:

193 Os Bombeiros
192 A Ambulância
190 A Polícia
Fire brigade
Ambulance
Police

Personal object pronouns

We have already met subject pronouns (eu, tu, ele, etc.) and reflexive pronouns (me, te, se, etc.). The chart below contains these sets of pronouns as well as the following new sets:

- 1 Direct object pronouns
- 2 Indirect object pronouns
- 3 Pronouns after a preposition
- 4 Pronouns after the preposition com

Sub -ject	Reflexive	Direct	Indirect	After a pre- position	After com
eu	me	me	me	mim	comigo
I	myself	me	to me	me	with me
tu	te	te	te	ti	contigo
you	yourself	you	to you	you	with you
ele	se	0	lhe	ele	com ele
he	himself	him/it	to him	him	with him
ela	se	a	lhe	ela	com ela
she	herself	her/it	to her	her	with her
você	se	o/a	lhe	si/você	consigo/com você
you	yourself	you	to you	you	with you
o sr/	se	0	lhe	o sr	com o sr
a sra	se	a	lhe	a sra	com a sra
you	yourself	you	to you	you	with you
nós	nos	nos	nos	nós	conosco ³
we	ourselves	us	to us	us	with us
(vós)	(vos)	(vos)	(vos)	(vós)	convosco
you	yourselves	you	to you	you	with you
eles	se	os	lhes	eles	com eles
they	themselves	them	to them	them	with them
elas	se	as	lhes	elas	com elas
they	themselves	them	to them	them	with them
vocês	se	os/as	lhes	si/vocês	com vocês
you	yourselves	you	to you	you	with you

³ connosco (Pt) with us

1 Direct object pronouns: o, os, a, as

Ele viu o filme? Has he seen the film?	Viu-o ontem He saw it yesterday
Conhece a Ana? Do you know Ana?	Conheço-a I do (know her)

Frequently the 'it' is omitted in Portuguese:

Gostou do clube? Gostei, sim.

Did you like the club? Yes I liked it.

2 Indirect object pronouns: Ihe, Ihes

Falou ao professor?

Did you speak to the teacher?

Sim, falei-lhe (or, falei com ele)

Yes I spoke to him

Deu os livros às crianças?

Did you give the books to the children?

Dei-lhes os livros mais cedo

I gave the books to them earlier

3 Pronouns after a preposition

Falaram de nós

They spoke about us

Tenho boas notícias para ele

I have good news for him

Pensavam em mim

They were thinking about me

4 Pronouns after the preposition com (with)

This preposition contracts with the pronouns **mim**, **ti**, **si**, **nós** and **vós**:

Você quer falar comigo?

Do you want to speak to me?

Ele pensa que vai contigo ao café

He thinks that he is going with you to the café

Posso estudar consigo⁴?

Can I study with you?

Cantou conosco

He sang with us

Vamos convosco⁵?

Are we going with you?

4 In Brazil you are more likely to hear 'com você'

Position of direct and indirect pronouns

The same rules apply for these pronouns as for the reflexive pronouns, i.e. they are placed:

- 1 Before the verb if the sentence contains: a question, negative, short adverb, preposition, relative clause ('He said that . . .').
- 2 After and joined to the verb with a hyphen: in all other cases.

As with the reflexive pronoun, in Brazil (even when the conditions in 1 above do not apply) these direct and indirect object pronouns tend to be placed in front of the verb:

Ele os comprou

He bought them (Br)

(Ele) comprou-os

He bought them (Pt)

Remember that it is not possible to start a sentence with an object pronoun – the subject pronoun (here, **ele**) must begin the sentence.

Exercise 12

Rewrite the following sentences using the correct direct object pronoun:

1 Ela lava a louça S
Ela a lava S

She washes the dishes She washes them

2 Eu arranjei um encontro Arranjei . . .

I arranged a meeting
I arranged it

3 Tu vendeste a casa?

Did you sell the house?

Vendi- ...

I sold it

4 Você tinha as chaves Você ... tinha You had the keys You had them

Remember that in Brazil the pronouns would tend to be placed before the verb: **Você as tinha** ('You had them').

Exercise 13

Fill in the correct indirect object pronoun:

- 1 I gave a watch to him Dei-... um relógio
- 2 I didn't tell you the news Não ... disse as notícias
- 3 He bought the cakes for her Comprou-... os bolos
- 4 She explained the problem to us Explicou-... o problema

⁵ vamos convosco (Pt); 'vamos com vocês' also commonly heard

How much can you remember?

- 1 How do you say? to get up, to dress, to wash, to sit down
- 2 Can you answer these questions in Portuguese?
- 1 What time did you get up this morning?
- 2 What time did you go to bed?
- 3 Where do you wash?
- 3 Can you translate this into English:

Normalmente, levanto-me às oito horas, lavo-me e visto-me. Tomo o café da manhã na cozinha. Saio de casa às quinze para as nove. Vou ao meu emprego no centro da cidade.

- 4 Can you ask these questions in Portuguese?
- 1 What time did you leave home?
- 2 Where did you sit down to have breakfast?
- 3 Where did you get dressed?
- **5** What do you think these verbs mean?

zangar-se, lembrar-se de, enganar-se, queixar-se, cortar-se, sentar-se, lavar-se

6 Fill in the correct verb endings in the imperfect tense:

respir _____ We were breathing (respirar) You (você) were eating (comer) com _____ I was leaving (partir) part They were walking (andar) anda ____

7 Write out the imperfect of the verb ter.

Then write out the conditional of ter and fazer.

8 How would you say:

I have a cold; my head hurts; I feel dizzy: I have a pain in my ear

9 Translate (the first one has been done for you):

falo-lhe

I speak to her/to him/to you

falei-te falaram-me falou-nos fala-lhes

10 Read the following dialogue and answer the questions which follow:

Lucinda: A que horas você se levanta?

Luis: LUCINDA:

Levanto-me às sete e meia. Por que se levanta tão cedo?

Luis:

Porque tenho de ir trabalhar e o meu escritório é muito

longe. Sou contabilista.

Vocabulary

tão cedo so early

tenho de ir trabalhar I have to go and work my office is very far away o meu escritório é muito longe

sou contabilista/contador

I'm an accountant

- 1 At what time does Luis get up?
- 2 What does Lucinda then ask Luis?
- 3 What reason does Luis give?

8 Não desligue . . .

Hold on ...

In this lesson you will learn about:

- using the post office and phoning
- the perfect tense
- the pluperfect tense
- using the bank: changing money and opening a bank account

Dialogue 1 Nos correios

CLIENTE: Oueria selos para mandar estas cartas para os

Estados Unidos, por favor.

Funcionário: Quantos selos deseja? Quatro?

CLIENTE: Sim. Quanto é tudo?

Funcionário: R\$3,00.

Dialogue 2 Na cabine telefônica três

Funcionário: O senhor queria fazer uma chamada?

ÁLVARO: Queria, sim, para Roma, Itália. Qual é o código da

Itália? Posso ver a lista telefônica?

Funcionário: O código do país é 0039, e depois tem de teclar o

código de área para Roma, 6. Pode usar a cabine

telefônica número três ...

Dialogue 3 Na posta-restante

CLIENTE: Faz favor. Tem algumas cartas dirigidas a David

Sinclair?

Funcionário: Só um minuto, vou verificar ... ah sim, aqui estão

duas cartas dirigidas ao senhor David Sinclair.

Vocabulary

selos (mpl)stampscartas (fpl)letterspara mandar parato send toos Estados UnidosUSA

fazer uma chamada/um telefonema to make a phone call

aqui estão here are

vou verificar I'll go and check

Ouanto é tudo?

How much does it come to? (lit.: How much is everything?)

o código do país international code

o código de área area code teclar/discar to dial

a lista telefônica/o catálogo telephone directory

dirigidas a addressed to
um telegrama a telegram
o carteiro the postman
só um minuto just a second
um pacote/uma encomenda parcel/packet
uma carta registrada a registered letter

uma carta registada (Pt)

a caixa de correio postbox o código postal post code

Exercise 1

Now it is your turn to ask for certain things in a post office:

- 1 You would like to call London. You need a telephone directory. You need to find out what the international code is for England as well as the code for London itself.
- 2 You would like 10 stamps to send letters to America.
- 3 You enquire whether there are any letters waiting for you in the poste restante.

The perfect tense

This tense is used for repeated events or states in the past which are still having repercussions almost up until the present. It most closely translates the English 'we have been', 'she has been', etc.

1 Não me tenho sentido bem

I haven't been feeling well (i.e. I haven't been feeling well (lately))

2 Têm viajado muito

They have been travelling a lot (i.e. They have been travelling a lot (recently))

Forming the perfect tense

Use the present tense of **ter** (**tenho**, **tens**, **tem**, **temos**, **têm**) + the past participle (**estado** (been), **visitado** (visited), **sido** (been), etc.). These past participles are invariable, i.e. they do not agree with who is speaking or what is being spoken about. (Remember, however, that past participles used adjectivally agree with the subject of the sentence: **a porta está fechada** (the door is closed).)

Examples

Têm comido pouco

They have been eating very little (recently)

Temos estudado

We have been studying (lately)

Tens telefonado muito

You have been telephoning a lot (recently)

Exercise 2

Fill in the correct past participle from the list below to complete these sentences:

- 1 Tem (been travelling) muito
- 2 Temos (been sending) cartas
- 3 Tens (been buying) tantas coisas

4 Tenho (been seeing)

muitos documentários

5 Têm (been)

bastante doentes

6 **Tem** (been training)

ultimamente

estado treinado viajado comprado visto mandado

Using the perfect tense

The perfect tense is fairly restricted in its use. The preterite tense, on the other hand, translates both 'I wrote' and 'I have written' – actions which are complete and confined to a distinct period of time:

Ele escreveu as suas memórias

He has written (he wrote) his memoirs (action over and finished – preterite)

Tem mandado muitas cartas

He has sent a lot of letters (i.e. He has been sending a lot of letters (lately))

Making a call from a phone box

Here are the instructions you would find in **uma cabine telefônica** (a telephone box)

Coloque a ficha¹
Retire o fone do gancho
Aquarde o tom de teclar²
Tecle o número

You may have a telephone card – um cartão telefônico. In this case you will be asked coloque o cartão

² or, o sinal de discar; o sinal de marcar (Pt)

Exercise 3

The English translation of the above instructions has been mixed up. Can you sort it out?

Coloque a ficha

Wait for dialling tone

Retire o fone do gancho Disque o número Insert token Lift receiver

Aguarde o sinal de discar

Dial number

Problems that may arise ...

ser cortado (or ser desligado)

to be cut off

o sinal de ocupado

engaged tone

o sinal de impedido (Pt)

engaged tone

Once through to the correct number say: **Alô**? (Hello) (**Está?** (Pt) Hello?/Are you there?). If you answer a call say: **Alô** (Hello) (**Estou** (Pt) Hello) (*lit*.: 'I am').

The pluperfect tense

This tense in Portuguese is called the **mais que perfeito**, i.e. 'more than perfect'. It is used for actions which have taken place *before* another past action and translates the English 'They had left', 'I had eaten', etc.

Forming the pluperfect

Use the imperfect tense of the verb ter (tinha, tinhas, tinha, tinhamos, tinham) + past participle:

Tinham organizado a festa quando ele chegou

They had organized the party when he arrived

Ainda não tinha terminado o trabalho quando o gerente telefonou

He still had not finished the work when the manager phoned

Exercise 4

Provide the missing words:

- 1 Ele _____ comprado uma pizza para viagem He had bought a take-away pizza
- 2 Você _____ aberto uma conta bancária You had opened a bank account
- 3 Ela _____ bombado³ no exame de motorista
 She had failed the driving test

Palavras Cruzadas

Can you work out these clues? The answers are in the Key.

horizontais

do do Novdosto 2.0

verticais

1 Estado do Nordeste

2 Catálogo telefônico

5 Colégios

4 Terminada

6 Roupa feminina

6 Ilumina a Terra

8 O que se respira

7 Gosto muito

9 Adicionar

1	2		3	4	
5					
6			7	8	
		9			

Provérbios

Can you work out what the following proverbs mean by filling in the blanks in the English translations:

Não	deixes	para	amanhã	0	que	podes	fazer	hoje	
Don	't			ti	11 _		what	t	

³ **bombado** from **bombar em** ('to fail') very colloquial. More common is **reprovado** from **ser reprovado em** ('to fail')

É melhor mais tarde do que nunca		
late		
Mais vale um pássaro na mão, que dois voando		
hand	worth	_

More on pronouns

Before moving on to some irregularities found when dealing with pronouns it might be a good idea to revise the section in Lesson 7 on direct and indirect object pronouns.

The irregularities are as follows:

1 Where a direct object pronoun (o, a, os, as) follows a verb ending in either -r, -s or -z, those letters are dropped and an l is added to the beginning of the pronoun, joined to the verb with a hyphen.

Vou comprar o \rightarrow **Vou comprá-lo** I'm going to buy it (car - o carro)

Comes as \rightarrow Come-las

You eat them (oranges – as laranjas)

Traz a \rightarrow Trá-la

He brings it (shopping list – a lista de compras)

An accent is added to the infinitives of -ar (á) and -er (ê) verbs following contraction with a pronoun and also to parts of the verb traz (as above), fez ('he, she, you did') and faz ('he, she, you do').

'Ela fê-lo!' gritou a criança.

'She did it!' shouted the child.

Note, however, that the -r, rule above does not apply to the present indicative of **ele/ela/você quer** ('he/she wants, you want'). Instead, an extra -e is added to the end of the verb: **você quere-o** ('you want it').

2 A direct object pronoun following a verb ending in a nasal sound, such as those ending in -m, -õe or -ão, has the letter -n added to the beginning of it and is joined to the verb with a hyphen.

Venderam os \rightarrow **Venderam-nos**

They sold them (books - os livros)

Você põe os lá → Põe-nos lá

You put them there (cakes - os bolos)

Eles dão as \rightarrow Eles dão-nas

They give them (magazines - as revistas)

Order and treatment of object pronouns

When there is more than one object pronoun in the same sentence, the rule is that the indirect precedes the direct. Study the following sentences:

Ela comprou-lhe o disco-laser

She bought the compact disc for him

Ela comprou-lho (lhe – for/to him o - it)

She bought it (the compact disc) for him

Você deu-me a informação

You gave me the information

Você deu-ma (me – to me a – it)

You gave it (the information) to me

The indirect pronoun joins with the direct pronoun and produces:

indirect direct

me + $o/a/os/as \rightarrow mo ma mos mas it/them to me$

te + $o/a/os/as \rightarrow to ta tos tas it/them to you$

lhe + $o/a/os/as \rightarrow lho lha lhos lhas it/them to him, her, you$

 $nos + o/a/os/as \rightarrow no-lo no-la no-los no-las it/them to us$

(vos) + $o/a/os/as \rightarrow$ (vo-lo vo-la vo-los vo-las)

lhes + $o/a/os/as \rightarrow lho lha lhos lhas it/them to them$

Position of pronouns in future and conditional tenses

These are placed between the infinitive and the endings:

Limpá-lo-ei mais tarde I shall wash it (car) later

Vendê-la-iam rapidamente They would sell it (house) quickly

These constructions are not favoured in spoken, less formal, Portuguese. To avoid them the following may be used:

1) ir + infinitive (to replace the future)

Vou limpá-lo mais tarde I shall wash it (the car) later

2) the Imperfect (to replace the Conditional)

Vendiam-na rapidamente They would sell it (the house) quickly

Position of pronouns in compound tenses

Pronouns follow the verb **ter** and are attached to it with a hyphen (if none of the rules applies for placing the pronoun before the verb – see Lesson 7):

Tinha-o comprado não o tinha comprado He had bought it but He had not bought it

Dialogue 4 No banco

CLIENTE: Posso trocar um cheque de viagem?

Funcionário: Tem o seu passaporte? Qual é o seu endereço aqui,

por favor?

CLIENTE: Estou no Hotel Itamarati, na Avenida Ipiranga.

Qual é a cotação?

Funcionário: Quer trocar dólares? O câmbio de compra é a R\$0,95

e o de venda é a R\$0,99. Faz favor de assinar aqui.

Vocabulary

Posso trocar4 um cheque de viagem?

Can I cash a traveller's cheque?

Qual é o seu endereço aqui? What's your address here?

Qual é a cotação? What is the rate?

Qual é o câmbio? What's the exchange rate?

Quer trocar dólares? Do you want to exchange dollars?

O câmbio de compra é a ... The buying rate is ...

O câmbio de venda é a ... The selling rate is ...

Faz favor de assinar aqui Please sign here

Exercise 5

How would you say:

Hello, Can I change these traveller's cheques, please (estes cheques de viagem)? I am staying at the Pensão Bonita, in Rua Timbiras. What's the exchange rate?

Once you have made your transaction you will be told:

'O senhor/a tem de entregar a ficha na caixa para receber o dinheiro'.

You must take your token (ficha) and hand it over at the cashier's desk (a caixa) to receive your money.

In most of the banks you will be required to stay in the queue: 'Tem de ficar na fila' ('You must stay in the queue')

Exercise 6

Read the following passage on Brazil then answer the questions which follow:

O Brasil, vibrante e dinâmico, é um país repleto de grandes matas e recursos naturais. O povo brasileiro consiste de uma mistura de raças. Isto gera uma cultura e folclore bastante variados e exuberantes.

Vocabulary

repleto de full of matas forests

o povo the people recursos naturais natural resources

gera produces consiste de consists of

raças races bastante quite

1 What qualities does the writer claim about Brazil?

2 What does s/he say about the terrain?

3 What, in the writer's opinion, produces Brazil's particular brand of culture? How is this described?

Dialogue 5 Abrindo uma conta

CLIENTE: Gostaria de abrir uma conta (bancária). Que é

necessário fazer?

Funcionário: Tem uma referência a seu respeito e um compro-

vante de assinatura?

⁴ cambiar 'to change/exchange'

CLIENTE: Sim, tenho.

Funcionário: Está bem. Quer fazer um depósito em conta

corrente ou um depósito a prazo?

CLIENTE: Um depósito em conta corrente com um talão de

cheques, um cartão magnético para a caixa auto-

mática e um extrato de conta mensal.

Vocabulary

Gostaria de abrir uma conta bancária I'd like to open a bank account

Oue é necessário fazer? What is required? uma referência a seu respeito a character reference comprovante de assinatura specimen signature um depósito em conta corrente current account um depósito a prazo deposit account um talão de cheques a cheque book um livro de cheques (Pt) a cheque book um cartão bancário a cheque card o saldo balance

um cartão magnético para a caixa

automática

um extrato de conta (mensal)

cash-point card

a (monthly) statement

Exercise 7a

You want to open a current account with a cheque book. You also want a cash-point card and a monthly statement. What would you ask for?

Exercise 7b

What are you being asked here?

- 1 Tem uma referência a seu respeito?
- 2 Quer um depósito a prazo?
- 3 Quer um cartão magnético para a caixa automática?
- 4 Tem um comprovante de assinatura?

The present continuous tense

This tense consists of the present indicative of the verb **estar** + gerund:

Estamos cantando We are singing
Estou dando I am giving
Está indo He is going

This tense conveys the idea of a continuous action. Don't, however, confuse it with the present indicative, which can translate the English 'he is (buying)/ he (buys)' which is simply: **compra**.

In Portugal you are more likely to hear estar + a + infinitive in place of estar + gerund: estou a comprar ('I am buying').

The gerund

This is equivalent to the English present participle (ending in '-ing'). It is formed by removing the final **-r** of any verb and adding **-ndo**:

estar \rightarrow esta \rightarrow estandobeingpartir \rightarrow parti \rightarrow partindoleavingbeber \rightarrow bebe \rightarrow bebendodrinking

The gerund is used to express a continuous action:

eating comendo buying comprando selling vendendo

The continuous action can also be expressed in other tenses besides the present:

Examples

estava indo he was going (imperfect)
estará indo he shall be going (future)

Exercise 8

Here are instructions for using a cash-point card (called **o cartão Instantâneo**) issued by one particular Brazilian bank. Can you decipher these instructions? Some vocabulary is provided below.

Como utilizar o cartão Instantâneo



Saques (Conta Corrente)

Insira o seu cartão Digite seu código secreto Aperte a opção desejada Retire o cartão Retire o seu dinheiro

Vocabulary

consulta de saldos

balance enquiry

depositar

to deposit to withdraw

sacar saques

withdrawals

insira digitar insert to key in

a opção desejada retire o seu dinheiro the desired option

take your money

Exercise 9

What advice do you think is being given in Informações úteis (Useful information)? (see p. 147)

Vocabulary

pessoal

personal

intransferível

untransferable

Informações úteis

- O seu Código Secreto é pessoal e intransferível.
- Memorize-o ou guarde-o em local seguro separado do cartão.
- Não o revele a ninguém.
- Em caso de perda ou roubo do cartão, avise imediatamente a sua agência.
- Não empreste seu cartão magnético a ninguém.

Vocabulary

Memorize-o

guarde-o em local seguro

não o revele a ninguém em caso de perda ou roubo

avise imediatamente a sua agência não o empreste a ninguém

keep it in a safe place

don't tell anyone if it is lost or stolen

contact your bank immediately

Memorize it (your pin number)

don't give it to anybody

More plurals of nouns and adjectives

A Nouns or adjectives which end in -ão take one of three endings in the plural:

1 $-\tilde{ao} \rightarrow -\tilde{o}es$ (the most likely possibility)

a atenção → as atenções attention/s

a coleção → as coleções

collection/s

a organização → as organizações organization/s comilão -> comilões greedy

2 - $\tilde{a}o \rightarrow -\tilde{a}es$

o cão → os cães

dog/s

o pão → os pães

bread

 $3 - \tilde{a}o \rightarrow - \tilde{a}os$

o irmão → os irmãos

brother/s

a mão → as mãos

hand/s

B Nouns or adjectives which end in -1 drop the -1 and add -is in the plural:

o móvel

→ os móveis

(furniture)

 \rightarrow comerciais comercial o guarda-sol

→ os guarda-sóis

(commercial) (sunshade/s)

azul

→ azuis

(blue)

pastoril⁵ \rightarrow **pastoris** (pastoral) difícil⁵ \rightarrow difíceis (difficult)

5 Note that words ending in **-il** have two possible endings – **-is** or **-eis**. This changes according to whether the **-il** is stressed. If it is stressed, you add **-is**. If unstressed, you add **-eis**. In the case of **difficil** the accent over the **i** informs you that the stress falls there and not on the **-il** at the end of the word.

Exercise 10

Give the plurals of the following:

1 a televisão

2 o avião

3 a ligação

4 amável (kind)

5 portunhol (a mixture of Spanish and Portuguese)

6 radical (radical)

Plurals of compound nouns

1 If a compound noun is a combination of verb + noun, only the noun takes the plural:

o guarda-roupao os guarda-roupas

the wardrobes the wardrobes

2 If the term is a combination of adjective + noun, both words become plural:

o cachorro-quente \rightarrow os cachorros-quentes

the hot-dogs the hot-dogs

How much can you remember?

1 How would you say:

1 I want six stamps for Ireland

2 I'd like to make a phone call. Do you have the telephone directory?

3 What is the code for Canada? What is the code for Vancouver? Which booth?

4 I haven't been studying much (lately)

5 The receiver (phone); the number; dialling tone; to be cut off; to be engaged

- 2 Can you translate these into English:
- 1 Ele tinha partido quando o carteiro chegou
- 2 **Tínhamos posto** (put) **as xícaras na cozinha** (the cups in the kitchen)
- 3 Eu tinha comprado um sanduíche para viagem
- 4 Posso cambiar um cheque de viagem?
- 5 Qual é a cotação?
- 6 Um cartão magnético para a caixa automática
- **3** Can you give the plurals of:
 - a ligação (link), o irmão, o pão, azul, o hotel
- 4 Can you give the singulars of:
 - as organizações, as mãos, os cães, difíceis

5 Read the following passage and see if you can translate it into English:

Esta manhã fui ao posto telefônico⁶ para fazer uma chamada. O funcionário lá disse-me que eu tinha de esperar um pouco porque havia uma fila.⁷ Enquanto esperava, procurei o código de Portugal e também o código de área de Lisboa. Disquei o número de telefone. Estava ocupado. Disquei o número outra vez ... Ah! Esta vez tocava ... Eu disse 'Alô?' Mas ninguém respondeu! Cortaram a ligação!

ser cortado to be cut off cortaram a ligação I was cut off

enquanto esperava while I was waiting

procurei I looked for tocava it was ringing uma fila a queue

posto telefônico telephone company/office⁷

⁶ In Brazil, telephone calls are made from either public phones nicknamed orelhões (big ears), or from posto telefônico.

⁷ a bicha (Pt) 'queue'

9 O fim de semana

The weekend

In this lesson you will learn about:

- buying tickets at the cinema, theatre, etc.
- discussing leisure activities and holiday plans
- · using the passive
- talking about the weather and the seasons
- using the subjunctive

Dialogue 1 No cinema

José: A sessão está esgotada!

Duarte: Não. Não se preocupe. Vamos à próxima sessão

que começa às nove e meia.

BILHETEIRA: Quantas entradas desejam? Querem meia ou

inteira?

José: Três inteiras, por favor. Ainda há lugar no meio

da sala?

BILHETEIRA: Sim há vários lugares no centro.

Vocabulary

estar esgotado/a to be sold out a sessão the show

Não se preocupe Don't worry

a próxima sessão começa the next show begins

a entrada ticket
o ingresso ticket

no meio da sala in the middle of the hall

no centro in the centre inteira/meia one/half ticket

Dialogue 2 No teatro

Funcionária: Que ingressos desejam e para quando?

João: Dê-nos um camarote, por favor, para a próxima

quinta-feira, na matinê das três e meia.

Vocabulary

Dê-nos um camarote
a próxima quinta-feira
a peça
o palco
a platéia

Give us a box
next Thursday
the play
the stage
the stalls

Dialogue 3 No jogo de futebol

ANA: Queríamos quatro ingressos de arquibancada, por

favor.

Funcionário: Coberta ou descoberta?

Ana: Coberta que é mais fresquinha. Esta vai ser uma

grande partida!

Funcionário: Se os senhores quiserem, podem também comprar

um programa do jogo e um cartaz.

Vocabulary

quatro ingressos de arquibancada four se coberta ou descoberta covered

mais fresquinha/o nice a

Esta vai ser uma grande partida!

Se os srs quiserem podem também comprar

um programa do jogo a prog

um cartaz a poster

four seats (on the terrace) covered or uncovered area

nice and cool

This is going to be a great match!

If you want you can also buy

a programme of the match

Exercise 1

Can you remember how to say in Portuguese:

- 1 Four seats in the stalls, in the middle.
- 2 I would like a box at the theatre for next Saturday's show. It's sold out!?
- 3 Six seats in the uncovered area to see the football match today. Do you have a programme?

Diminutives and augmentatives

Fresquinho is an example of the diminutive, which is widely used in Portuguese. The following are added to the end of a word to alter the meaning to 'little':

-inho -zinho -ito -zito

These endings will agree with the subject in number and gender. For example:

o gato	the cat	o gatinho	the kitten
a caixa	the box	a caixinha	the little box
as mesas	the tables	as mesinhas	the little tables

Adding a diminutive ending to a word can also produce a tone of affection:

uma salada	a salad	uma saladinha	a nice little salad
um café	a coffee	um cafezinho	a nice little coffee

Conversely, to express an augmentative add -ão to the end of a word:

a caixa the box o caixão the large box/coffin

Dialogue 4 No intervalo

Three people discuss a film ...

José: Este filme é uma droga!

DUARTE: Não acho! Tem uns bons atores muito famosos.

JORGE: Mas a história não presta para nada! Estou de acordo

com o José.

DUARTE: Sem essa! Estou farto disto, vou-me embora!

Vocabulary

uns bons atores muito famosos

some good, very famous actors

a história the story/plot não acho! I don't think so! vou-me embora! I'm going!

(ir-se embora - to go away)

Expressing yourself . . .

Negatively: Não estou de acordo com/Não concordo com ... I don't agree with ...

Estou farto (disto)! I'm fed up (with this)!

É uma droga! It's rubbish!

(Isto) não presta para nada! It's awful!/no good!

É terrível/horrível!

É tão chato!

Não acho!

It's so boring!

I don't think so!

Sem essa!

Come off it!

Cala a boca!

Shut up!

detesto

I hate

Positively: Estou (completamente) de acordo com/ Concordo (completamente) com ... I agree (completely) with ...

É ótimo! It's great!

É (muito) legal! It's (really) nice/terrific/cute!

Que espetáculo!Terrific!É genial!It's great!Está bemIt's OK

Também acho que ... I also think that ...

adoroI loveAcho que simI think soÉ maravilhosoIt's marvellous

Exercise 2a

Using the previous dialogues can you translate the following into Portuguese:

Paulo: I think the film is boring. The plot is awful and the acting (a atuação) is rubbish.

ISABEL: I don't agree. The plot is not awful, it's great! I also think

that the acting is OK. In fact (na verdade) the film is really

great!

PAULO: Come off it, it's so boring I'm going home!

Exercise 2b

Look at the publicity for the following events then answer the questions:





- 1 Which poster would you choose if you wanted to participate in a carnival atmosphere? How many days does the event run? What is the last event and what prize is involved?
- 2 Which days of the week is the show on and what is the theatre called? Are there afternoon performances?

Vocabulary

a estréia opening/première
o concurso de máscaras masked competition
noite do terror night of horror
noite da fantasia fancy dress night

divirta-se! have a good time/enjoy yourself!

não perca!don't miss it!1º prêmio1st prizeo finalthe finalo automóvelcaro espetáculothe showa bilheteiraticket officera bilheteriaticket office

Exercise 3

Which type of film would you choose to see? Match up the English below with the Portuguese:

um filme de suspense um filme de amor/romance um filme de terror um filme de ficção científica um musical um desenho animado

science fiction a cartoon a love story a thriller a horror story a musical

The passive

The passive translates the English:

He was killed by a bullet Foi morto por uma bala

They were defeated by the other team Foram vencidos pela outra equipe

Forming the passive

Use the verb **ser** + past participle; **ser** can be in any tense. The past participle agrees with the subject of the sentence as seen in the above examples:

He was killed (subject is 'he') – **Foi morto**They were defeated (subject is 'they') – **Foram vencidos**

Por translates 'by':

Ela será atropelada pelo carro She will be run over by the car

A janela foi aberta pelo homem

The window was opened by the man

The passive is often replaced in Portuguese by

1 using a verb in the reflexive:

Apagou-se a luz

The light was switched off (lit.: the light switched itself off)

2 using 'they':

Pintam o edifício todos os anos

The building is painted every year (*lit.*: 'they', i.e. someone, paints the building)

The passive using estar + past participle

Whereas **ser** + past participle expresses an *action* of some kind ('was knocked down *by*'; 'were restrained *by*'), the passive using **estar** reflects a *state*. Compare:

O carro foi roubado pelo ladrão

The car was stolen by the thief

A porta estava aberta

The door was open

Dialogue 5 No fim de semana

An interviewer is out doing market research (pesquisa de mercado) about what people do over the weekend. He asks: O que faz ...? What do you do ...?

Entrevistador: O que faz no domingo de manhã?

Transeunte 1: Fico deitada na cama até o meio-dia. Depois,

vejo televisão.

Entrevistador: E no domingo à tarde?

Transeunte 1: Vejo mais televisão ou ouço música. Às vezes

telefono para a minha amiga para conversar.1

Entrevistador: O que faz no sábado de manhã?

Transeunte 2: Vou visitar os meus pais. Depois, vou ao super-

mercado.

Entrevistador: E no sábado à tarde? Transeunte 2: Saio com uns amigos.

Vocabulary

'fim' end

There are many useful expressions in Portuguese using 'fim'. Here are just a few:

o fim de semana the weekend at the weekends o fim do mês the end of the month the end of the year

a fim de in order to sem fim endless

estar a fim de (fazer) algo to feel like (doing) something

estar a fim de alguém to like/fancy someone

por fim finally

Exercise 4

Using the English words as clues can you find the Portuguese sentences in the above dialogues which are the equivalent of:

- 1 I stay in bed till midday (a cama bed)
- 2 I go out with some friends (saio I go out)
- 3 I watch more television (vejo I watch)
- 4 I go to visit my parents (os meus pais my parents)
- 5 I listen to music (música music)
- 6 Sometimes I phone my friend for a chat (telefono I phone)

Exercise 5

With the aid of the above can you now try to translate Dialogue 5 into English?

Exercise 6a

Here are some things people might do at the weekend. Can you say what they are, using the clues below?



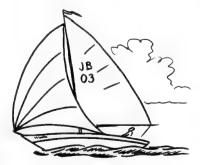
ir pescar

(for this you will need a stretch of water and some bait)



lavar o carro

(more water involved here + soap)



ir velejar

(not a good hobby if you get seasick)

More colloquial is bater papo/to chat or fofocar/to gossip cavaquear (Pt) to chat/gossip



ler os jornais (catch up on all the news)

Exercise 6b

Can you work out what these activities are?

1 a ginástica (swing those arms!)

2 o golfe (a hole in one!)

3 o karatê (involves lots of chops)
4 dançar (could include a samba)

5 a patinação (a slippery hobby)
 6 pegar onda/fazer surfe (requires the ocean,

the choppier the better)

Expressing activity

fazer \rightarrow faço I do ... To do (e.g. aerobics)

Vou (nadar) I go (swimming)
Vou passear I go for a walk

Vou passear de carro I go for a drive

Vou passear de barco I go for a sail

jogo ... I play ...

Exercise 7

Can you translate the following into Portuguese?

On Saturday morning I go to visit some friends. On Saturday afternoon I play golf and on Saturday evening I watch TV. On Sunday morning I stay in bed till midday and then I wash the car.

The present subjunctive

The present subjunctive expresses the English 'may' and 'might'. Whereas a sentence in the present indicative mood makes a statement or an assertion, a sentence in the present subjunctive mood expresses something which is open to doubt and uncertainty:

Talvez você conheça a Ana?

Perhaps you know Ana? (maybe not)

Tomara que tenha sorte!

I hope you are lucky! (but you might not be)

Não acho que ele estude muito

I don't think he studies much (you don't know for sure)

Conheces alguém que tenha um carro?

Do you know anyone who has a car? (uncertain who the person is)

The subjunctive also expresses emotion about something: 'I'm sorry that/I regret that . . .'

Sinto muito que não esteja aqui

I'm sorry that you are not here

Forming the present subjunctive

You have, in fact, already seen the present subjunctive endings in the form of the imperative (see Lesson 4). Start from the 1st person singular (eu) of the present indicative and add these endings to the stem:

for -ar verbs -e -es -e -emos -em for -er and -ir verbs -a -as -a -amos -am

Exercise 8

Write out the following verbs in the present subjunctive:

escrever (escreva, escrevas, etc.) to write transferir to transfer controlar to control

Some irregular present subjunctives

Some subjunctives are not formed as described in the previous section and they are best learned individually:

dar	to give	(que) dê dês dê demos dêem
ser	to be	(que) seja sejas sejamos sejam
estar	to be	(que) esteja estejas esteja, etc.
ir	to go	(que) vá vás vá vamos vão
saber	to know	(que) saiba saibas saiba, etc.
querer	to want	(que) queira queiras queira, etc.

The perfect subjunctive

This is formed by using the present subjunctive of the verb **ter** + past participle:

Não penso que ele tenha lido o livro I don't think he has read the book

The weather (o tempo)

The seasons of the year As estações do ano

Dezembro, Janeiro e Fevereiro são os meses do verão. No verão faz calor.

Março, Abril e Maio são os meses do outono. No outono está fresco.

Junho, Julho e Agosto são os meses do inverno. No inverno faz frio.

Setembro, Outubro e Novembro são os meses da primavera. Na primavera faz bom tempo.

December, January and February are the months of summer. In summer the weather is warm.

March, April and May are the months of autumn. In autumn the weather is cool.

June, July and August are the winter months. In winter it's cold.

September, October and November are the spring months. In the spring the weather is nice.

Vocabulary

o Natal	Christmas	Feliz Natal!	Happy Christmas!
o Ano Novo	New Year	Feliz Ano Novo!	Happy New Year!
a Páscoa	Easter	Feliz Páscoa!	Happy Easter!

Exercise 9

Como está o tempo hoje? What's the weather like today?

Faz bom tempo The weather is good bad faz vento it's windy está chovendo it's raining faz sol it's sunny está nublado it's overcast

In answer to the question **Como está o tempo hoje?**, can you translate the following replies into Portuguese:

- 1 The weather is good; it's sunny.
- 2 The weather is bad; it's raining.
- 3 The weather is bad; it's windy.
- 4 The weather is bad; it's overcast.

Exercise 10

Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

Um diretor cinematográfico estava filmando num vilarejo remoto no sul do Brasil. Apareceu um camponês que lhe disse: 'Amanhã vai estar mau tempo. Vai chover'. No dia seguinte o camponês disse que ia fazer bom tempo e sol e assim aconteceu durante muitos dias. Um dia o camponês não apareceu e o diretor, confiando na infalibilidade do camponês, foi a casa dele e perguntou-lhe: Que tempo vamos ter amanhã? E o camponês respondeu-lhe: 'Não sei patrão. Ainda não li o jornal hoje e a minha televisão está quebrada.'

- 1 Where is the film director filming?
- 2 What does he believe the bumpkin's gift is?
- 3 In fact the weather information comes from ...?

Vocabulary

a remote village um vilarejo remoto um camponês country man bad/good weather mau/bom tempo it's going to rain vai chover (he) asked perguntou (he) replied respondeu not yet ainda não o jornal newspaper I read (past) li está quebrada/o pifada/o is broken down believing in the infallibility of confiando na infalibilidade de

Exercise 11

o patrão

Look at this map of Brazil and answer the following questions about the weather.

boss



- 1 Where would it be best to avoid if you wanted a peaceful, quiet day out?
- 2 Where would be the best place for a picnic?
- 3 Where would you not want to go if you hadn't packed a raincoat?
- 4 Look up the words for: thunder; fog; cloudy; temperature.

Exercise 12

Here are two advertisements for different types of holidays. Read them then answer the questions which follow:

В

A

Excursão Organizada!	*Camping Geribá*
Portugal!	cem lugares para:
Quinze dias!	tendas/trailers
Hotel de luxo!	* * * *
Perto da Praia!	chuveiros/eletricidade
Campo de Golfe!	loja – bar – piscina
Esqui aquático!	lavanderia automática quadra de tênis
!!!!!!!!!!	•

Vocabulary

excursão organizada (f)	package tour
quinze dias	fortnight
o camping	camp site
parque de campismo (Pt)	camp site
o hotel de luxo	luxury hotel
nas montanhas	in the mountain
tendas (fpl)	tents
trailers (mpl)	trailers/caravans
rulotes (mpl) (Pt)	trailers
a quadra de tênis (f)	tennis court
o campo	field, countryside

In A:

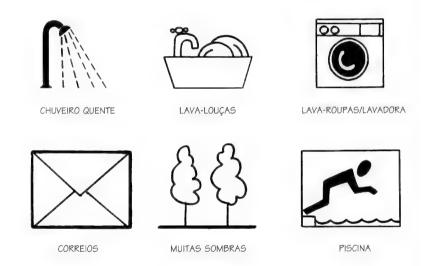
- 1 Where is the holiday and how long is it for?
- 2 Is it in a basic hotel?
- 3 What leisure activities does this type of holiday offer?

In B:

- 1 How many places are available on the site and for what type of accommodation?
- 2 Name three facilities provided by the site.

Exercise 13

Here are some symbols of facilities offered by a camp site. Can you guess what they represent?



Dialogue 6 Vamos ao Sul do Brasil



Two friends discuss possible holiday plans

Fernanda: Vamos ao sul do Brasil, ao Paraná, de carro. Isabel: Mas, é uma viagem muito longa de carro. Por que

não vamos de avião?

Fernanda: Porque eu não gosto de voar!

Isabel: Então, que achas de fazer excursões a pé nas

férias?

FERNANDA: É demasiado cansativo! Ficar numa pousada pode

ser uma boa idéia!

Isabel: Seria menos caro ficar numa pensão, num albergue,

ou mesmo, fazer camping.

FERNANDA: Camping! Seria melhor ficar em casa!

Vocabulary

uma viagem muito longa a very long journey

de carro by car

Por que não vamos de avião? Why not go by plane?

ao sul do to the south of Não gosto de voar I don't like flying

Então, que achas ...? Well/So, what do you think about ...?

excursões a pé nas férias walking holiday (uma excursão a pé) (a hike) é demasiado cansativo it's too tiring

é demasiado cansativo it's too tiring **fazer camping** to go camping

Ficar numa pousada pode ser uma boa idéia

Staying in a pousada might be a good idea

Seria menos caro ficar numa pensão

It would be less expensive to stay in a boarding house

Seria melhor ficar em casa!

It would be better to stay at home!

Where to stay

uma pousada inn

uma pensão a boarding house

uma albergaria an inn

cama e café da manhã bed and breakfast um albergue da juventude youth hostel um chalé rústico rustic chalet

Exercise 14

- 1 What does Isabel find unattractive about Fernanda's first suggestion?
- 2 How does Fernanda react to Isabel's suggestion about a walking holiday?
- 3 What alternative ideas does Isabel have for staying in a **pousada** and why doesn't she agree with her friend?

How much can you remember?

- 1 True or false?
- a peça = football match
- o cartaz = ticket
- a próxima sessão = sold out
- 2 Can you say in Portuguese:
- a little cake (o bolo cake)
- a little dog (o cão dog)
- a little plate (o prato plate)

I'm fed up! It's rubbish! I completely agree

3 What are the following:

um prêmio, um concurso, o domingo de manhã, a bilheteria, uma estréia, O Natal, faz sol

4 Can you translate these into Portuguese:

a cartoon, a horror film, a thriller, karate, judo, skating, I watch TV, I go out with friends

5 True or false?

ir pescar = to play golf
lavar o carro = to chat
ler os jornais = to surf

- 6 What are three ways of saying that something is great?
- 7 Translate the following into Portuguese:
- 1 Why not go to Bahia?
- 2 It would be a long journey
- 3 She would not like to fly
- 4 He would stay in a pousada
- 5 It is less expensive to go camping
- ${\it 8}$ Read this small passage, answer the questions, then translate it into English:

No sábado de manhã gosto de visitar os meus pais. Depois, vou ao supermercado. No domingo de manhã fico deitado na cama até o meio-dia. No domingo à tarde vejo televisão.

- 1 Is this person very energetic on a Sunday morning?
- 2 When does s/he do the shopping?
- 3 True or false? S/he goes to a football match on Saturday morning.
- 4 What does s/he do on Sunday afternoon?

10 Moro num apartamento

I live in a flat

In this lesson you will learn about

- · talking about where you live
- · dealing with problems in the home
- · using the subjunctive mood in the past
- saying what you would do if you won a prize in the sweepstakes

Dialogue 1 Fala da sua casa

The following individuals were asked about where they live

ANA: Você mora numa casa ou num apartamento?

JORGE: Moro num apartamento. O edifício tem porteiro

eletrônico.

ANA: Quantos quartos tem o seu apartamento?

JORGE: Tem quatro: a sala de visitas, um quarto de dormir,

a cozinha e o banheiro.

ANA: Tem garagem?

JORGE: Claro! Não gosto de estacionar o meu carro na rua!

ANA: Tem jardim?

JORGE: Não, mas tenho uma varanda com vista panorâmica.

Ana: E quantos apartamentos há no seu edifício? Jorge: Não sei ... talvez cinquenta, sessenta ...

Vocabulary

moro (morar)

I live

a sala/a sala de visitas/

a sala de estar living room
um quarto a room
um quarto de dormir bedroom
a cozinha kitchen
a garagem garage
não sei I don't know

estacionar na rua to park in the street

a varanda balcony
o jardim garden
quantos? how many?
no seu edifício in your building
porteiro eletrônico entryphone
vista panorâmica panoramic view

Dialogue 2 Moro numa casa

A_{NA}: Você mora numa casa ou num apartamento?

Graça: Moro numa casa.

ANA: Quantos quartos tem a sua casa?

GRAÇA: No térreo há a sala de visitas, a cozinha, a sala de

jantar e o hall de entrada. No primeiro andar há

três quartos e um banheiro.

ANA: Há uma garagem?

Graça: Há, ao lado da casa, e há um jardim também.

Ana: É uma casa, digamos, luxuosa, não é?

GRACA: É, sim. Há um alarme contra roubo, uma antena

parabólica, circuito interno de televisão em todos

os quartos, vidros duplos . . .

Vocabulary

o térreo the ground floor
o primeiro andar the first floor
a sala de jantar dining room
luxuosa/o luxurious
o hall de entrada the entrance hall

o alarme contra roubo

a antena parabólica

o circuito interno de televisão

os vidros duplos

burglar alarm satellite dish closed circuit television double glazing

Expressing 'to live'

In general: viver

Vivo em Moçambique I live in Mozambique

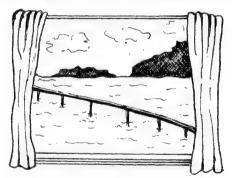
In a specific place: morar

Moro numa casa em Londres I live in a house in London

Exercise 1

Three people describe where they live. Using the details that they provide, can you decide which home belongs to which individual?

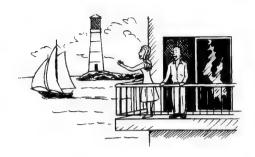
1



2



3



1 Rui: Moro num pequeno apartamento que tem três

quartos e uma varanda que dá para o mar. Não tenho

garagem; estaciono o meu carro na rua.

2 ISABEL: Acabei de mudar de casa e agora moro num estúdio

bem perto da Ponte Rio-Niterói.

3 PAULO: Moro numa casa. Tem cinco quartos e um jardim com

uma piscina. Comecei a construir uma garagem.

Vocabulary

dar para o mar

to overlook the sea

um estúdio bem perto de

a studio flat really near

a Ponte Rio-Niterói

Rio-Niterói Bridge

uma piscina

swimming pool

Acabei de mudar de casa

I have just moved house

acabar de

to have just

Comecei a construir

I have begun building

começar a

to begin to

construir

to build

More uses of bem

Não é bem assim

It's not quite like that

os bens (plural of bem)

goods/belongings

Exercise 2

Read this passage about homes in Brazil then answer the questions which follow in Portuguese:

A maioria dos brasileiros que vive nas cidades vive em apartamentos, em andares, aos quais chamam 'a sua casa', o seu lar. Uma 'casa' típica consiste em dois quartos de dormir, sala de visitas, sala de jantar, cozinha e banheiro.

- 1 True or false? The majority of Brazilian city dwellers live in houses.
- 2 How many rooms would a typical home have and what are these?

Vocabulary

em andareson floorsaos quais chamamwhich they callo seu lartheir home(o lar hearth/home)a maioria vivethe majority live(viver to live)cozinhakitchenquartos de dormirbedroomssala de visitasliving roomem apartamentos in flats/apartments

Exercise 3

The following headings can be seen in any Brazilian newspaper property section. Can you match the English translations to their Portuguese counterparts?

compras vendas andares lojas armazéns garagens moradias escritórios prédios sítios terrenos apartamentos

shops farms warehouses garages
buildings houses for sale flats wanted
floors offices plots of land

Exercise 4

Now look at the following advertisements and answer the questions.



Vocabulary

vende-se	for sale	a lareira	fireplace
aluga-se	to let	os dormitórios	bedrooms
passa-se	to sublet	próximo da praia	near the beach
casas prontas	newly built houses	localização	exceptional
frente para o mar	on the sea front	privilegiada	location
com churrasqueira	with barbecue	área de serviço	utility room
magnífica	magnificent	estuda permuta	considers
boa oportunidade	good opportunity		exchange
equipada	furnished	condomínio	exclusive
a copa	pantry	fechado	condominium

- 1 Which advert is for a commercial property and what type of business is involved?
- 2 What sort of dwelling is described in Morumbi?
- 3 Which advert would suit someone who likes the countryside and enjoys playing football? What are the other advantages it offers?
- 4 Which advert would be best for someone who has to travel into the centre every day?

- 5 Which advert would suit you if you were looking for an apartment with a sea view?
- 6 Which advert is for houses near the beach.

The imperfect subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive also expresses an uncertain, doubtful future but one which is even more remote than the present subjunctive. It translates the English, 'might' and often follows 'when', 'if', 'as soon as' and 'I wish':

```
Disse que escrevia (imperfect indic.)
quando tivesse tempo (imperfect subjunc.)

He said he would write (statement)
when he had time (doubtful – he might not have time)
```

Forming the imperfect subjunctive

Take the 3rd person plural of the preterite tense of any verb, remove the ending **-ram** and add:

```
-sse -sses -sse -ssemos -ssem
```

Example: perder 'to lose'

perderam	they lost (preterite) \rightarrow perde- + above endings
eu	perdesse
tu	perdess <i>es</i>
ele/a	perdesse
você	perdesse
nós	perdêss <i>emos</i>
eles/as	perdess <i>em</i>
vocês	perdessem .

In the **nós** form, an accent is added on the vowel before the ending:

```
in -ar verbs - falássemos
in -er verbs - escrevêssemos
in -ir verbs - partíssemos
```

Dialogue 3 A loteria esportiva

Listen to these people who talk about what they would do if they won a big prize in the **loteria esportiva** (the sweepstakes). Can you guess what their dreams are?

Antônio: Se eu ganhasse a loteria comprava um carro de

corrida ...

MARIA: Se eu pudesse ganhar a loteria fazia um cruzeiro,

comprava muita roupa e um palacete.

Manuela: Se eu ganhasse a loteria usava o dinheiro para

comprar mobílias para a minha casa.

José: Se eu ficasse rico, deixava o meu emprego e viajava

pelo mundo inteiro ...

Vocabulary

Se eu ganhasse If I won (were to win)

Se eu pudesse ganhar
Se eu ficasse rico
If I could win
If I became rich
um palacete
as mobilias
If I could win
If I became rich
a mansion
furnishings

as mobílias furnishings um carro de corrida a racing car

fazia um cruzeiro I would go on a cruise

muita roupa lots of clothes

usava o dinheiro I would use the money

(usar to use)

deixava o meu emprego I would leave my job

(deixar to leave/to quit)

viajava pelo mundo inteiro I would travel around the world

(viajar to travel)

Expressing 'to leave'

Partir to leave (e.g. for Italy)

Deixar to leave (e.g. a job), to give up or abandon something

Deixar de = to stop doing - **deixei de fumar**

I stopped smoking

Deixar cair = to drop (*lit*.: to let fall)

The pluperfect subjunctive

Use **ter** + past participle. **Ter** will be in the imperfect subjunctive:

se tivesse visitado if I had visited se tivesses arrumado if you had tidied up se tivesse decidido if you/he/she had decided

se tivéssemos¹ mudado if we had moved se tivessem ido if they had gone

1 The accent in the nós part of the verb shows that the stress is kept on the second syllable throughout.

Exercise 5

Read the description below of José's new flat. He describes a few details of the furnishings to a friend. He starts off in the centre of the living room. (To revise prepositions, see Lesson 4)

No centro da sala há uma mesa baixa para servir cafés, bebidas, etc. Atrás da mesa tenho um sofá. Ao lado esquerdo há uma mesinha pequena com um abajur em cima. Na parede, acima e atrás do sofá há um quadro com uma paisagem. Há uma televisão a cores ao lado direito do sofá e uma lareira ao lado esquerdo da mesinha. Há também duas poltronas.

Using the descriptions of the positions of José's furniture can you draw a plan of his living room and say what the following are in Portuguese?

colour TV, fireplace, armchairs, wall, sofa/couch, coffee table, table lamp, painting, occasional table

(Vocabulary for the rest of the items in the flat is at the end of this lesson.)

Conversation fillers

pois (Pt) well (then) so/as/since
sei lá . . . well . . ./who knows? . . .
portanto
pois bem well/so/therefore
well then

pois é that's right

pois não (Pt) (at end of sentence) isn't it/don't they?

pois sim! (Pt) yes, of course! of course!

paciência! oh well! (resignation)

penso que sim
penso que não
I think so
I don't think so

Dialogue 4 Problemas na casa

Dona Ana: Ô Pedro, vem cá! O banheiro está inundado. Que

hei de fazer?

Pedro: Deve ser um cano furado. É melhor chamar o enca-

nador.

Vocabulary

Ô ...! Hey ...! come here! está inundado is flooded

que hei de fazer? What should I do? it must be a burst pipe é melhor chamar o encanador best to call the plumber

Dona Ana: Ai, meu Deus! Agora falta a luz!

Pedro: Deve ser apenas um fusível. Vou verificar e, se

necessário, ponho um fusível novo. Vou também verificar as ligações elétricas da geladeira e da máquina de lavar roupa. As tomadas e os encaixes

estão em ordem ...

Vocabulary

Ai, meu Deus! for heaven's sake!

Agora falta a luz! Now the lights have gone!

Deve ser apenas um fusível

Vou verificar

It must just be a fuse
I'll check

Vou verificar
se necessário

Til check
if necessary

ponho um fusível novo
as ligações elétricas

I'll put in a new fuse
the electrical connections

As tomadas e os encaixes estão The plugs and sockets are fine em ordem (em ordem in order)

Dona Ana: Troquei as duas lâmpadas que estavam queimadas

na sala e fui ligar a televisão para ver a novela mas

agora a televisão não funciona!

PEDRO: Ah! A televisão não está pifada. O aparelho não

estava ligado à corrente! Tudo o que tive de fazer

foi ligar a tomada ao encaixe na parede!

Vocabulary

Troquei as duas lâmpadas que I changed the two fused lightbulbs

estavam queimadas

fui ligar I went to switch on

a novela the soap

a televisão não funciona the TV isn't working a televisão não está pifada the TV isn't broken

o aparelho não estava ligado à the TV (i.e. apparatus – aparelho)

corrente wasn't plugged in tudo que tive de fazer foi all I had to do was

ligar a tomada ao encaixe to put the plug into the socket

na parede on the wall

There are three ways of saying that something is not working:

... não trabalha/não funciona ...

isn't working/is out of order

... está pifado, quebrado/a ...

is out of order/is broken (down)

The term o aparelho can be used to mean 'machine/apparatus' of any kind.

Exercise 6

Can you find the Portuguese words for:

plug, flooded, plumber, a fuse, a burst pipe, fridge, washing machine, pump, lightbulbs, switch on the TV, is not plugged in, connections, socket

Exercise 7

And how would you say the following?

The fridge has broken down. I have (**tenho**) a burst pipe. I need (**preciso de**) a plumber. The TV is not plugged in. I need three lightbulbs. Do you have (**tem**) a fuse?

Exercise 8

Below is a list of electrical household items in Portuguese with a definition in English. Can you decide what these items are in English?

1 o fogão

(you need this to cook dinner)

2 a máquina de lavar roupa (use for cleaning clothes)

3 a geladeira

(handy for keeping things cool)

4 a máquina de lavar louça

(great for after large dinner parties)

5 a chaleira

(a bonus if you want a hot cup of tea)

6 a máquina de secar roupa (no more damp clothes)

7 a torradeira

(you make toast in this)

8 o ferro de passar a roupa (no more creases)

9 a batedeira

(cake-making made easy)

10 o aspirador

(your carpet's best friend)

11 o microondas

(for instant hot food)

Exercise 9

Look at the following index (o índice) from a typical Brazilian newspaper (o jornal) and try to answer the questions which follow.

1 What sort of 'useful information' is available?



2 You are a sports fan – which page do you turn to first?

3 You have a beach outing planned (but will it be warm?) and hope to take in a film in the evening. Which two sections would you consult?

4 You want to find out how your shares (ações) are getting on in the stock market (a Bolsa). Which section do you turn to?

(Full vocabulary is given at the end of the lesson.)

Exercise 10

Now here are some examples of Brazilian headlines – **as manchetes**. Can you match each of them to their English equivalent?

- 1 Pânico no supermercado homem cai dentro do freezer²
- 2 Patinho bêbado depois de consumir mais de um copo de uísque
- 3 Campo de alfaces roubado a polícia procura família de coelhos
- (a) Field of lettuces stolen police seek family of rabbits
- (b) Panic in supermarket man falls into freezer
- (c) Duck drunk after consuming more than a glass of whisky
- 2 o congelador (Pt) freezer

How much can you remember?

- **1** Describe your flat: it has two bedrooms, a small kitchen, a living room and a bathroom. You don't have a garden but you do have a garage, a door-entry system, double glazing and satellite TV.
- **2** Do you remember how to say?
- 1 It's not quite like that
- 2 The flat has a sea view
- 3 We have just moved
- 4 for sale
- 5 wanted
- **3** Write out the imperfect subjunctive of the verb **terminar** (to finish).
- **4** Can you translate these?
- 1 Se eu partisse amanhã, chegava a casa mais cedo
- 2 Se ele comprasse o carro, custava muito dinheiro
- 3 Se nós viajássemos todo o dia, ficávamos muito cansados

- **5** Can you name four types of room you would find in a house or flat?
- 6 Can you remember three expressions you could use to help fill in a conversation?

Vocabulary

Os móveis	Furniture
o sofá	sofa/couch
a mesinha	small table
a mesa	table
o abajur	table lamp
a parede	the wall
o quadro (com uma paisagem)	(landscape) painting
as poltronas	armchairs
a televisão a cores	colour TV
as cadeiras	chairs
o aparador	sideboard
o cesto (cheio de fruta)	basket (full of fruit)
os armários (modernos)	(modern) cupboards
o fogão a gás	gas cooker
o fogão elétrico	electric cooker
a geladeira	fridge
a pia	sink/handbasin
a mesinha de cabeceira	bedside table
a penteadeira	dressing table
o guarda-roupa	wardrobe
o rádio-relógio	clock radio
a banheira	bath
o espelho	mirror
o toalete	toilet
o tapete	carpet/rug
o bidê	bidet

O índice do jornal Newspaper index

impressões	impressions	cartaz	showing/what's on
política	politics	cinemas	cinemas
opinião	opinion	rádio	radio

internacional	international	televisão	TV
sociedade	society	farmácias	chemists
esporte	sports	transportes	transport
artes	the arts	classificados	classified ads
vidas	lives	tempo	weather
suplementos	supplements	país	country
negócios	business	programas	programmes

11 Encontramo-nos mais tarde?

Shall we meet later?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- making friends
- expressing past experiences and future plans
- the future subjunctive
- similarities between English and Portuguese and hints for reading

Situation 1 Um congresso

Four people plan to meet up at a conference (um congresso) the following summer. In order to make the initial introductions easier, they decide to circulate a small dossier about themselves on tape before the event.

1

Nome:

Eric Boucher

Idade:

35

Profissão:

correspondente estrangeiro

Estatura:

alto

Bebida preferida: Passatempo predileto: conhaque alpinismo

Carro:

Mercedes

Vocabulary

o correspondente estrangeiro

foreign correspondent

a estatura

build

a bebida preferida passatempo predileto favourite drink favourite hobby

(or favorito - favourite)

2

Nome:

Sarah Blackthorpe

Idade:

33

Profissão:

bibliotecária

Estatura: Bebida preferida:

baixa

Passatempo predileto:

laranjada crochê

Carro:

Volkswagen

Vocabulary

a laranjada

orangeade

o crochê

crochet

a bibliotecária librarian

3

Nome:

Maria Napoli

Idade:

28

Profissão: Estatura: estilista média

Bebida preferida: Passatempo predileto: Martini vôo livre

Carro:

Motocicleta (Harley Davidson)

Vocabulary

a estilista

fashion designer

o vôo livre

hang gliding

a motocicleta

motorbike

4

Nome:

Hugo Van Vliet

Idade:

40

Profissão: Estatura: advogado média

Bebida preferida: Passatempo predileto: vinho tinto filatelia

Carro:

não dirijo: bicicleta

Vocabulary

o advogado

lawyer

o vinho tinto red wine

a filatelia

stamp collecting

não dirijo I don't drive

a bicicleta bicycle

Exercise 1

Using the information given above can you answer the following questions:

1 Will Maria find much in common with Hugo? Give two reasons.

2 Will Hugo find Eric's hobby appealing?

3 Which two individuals are more likely to end up at the bar?

4 What is Eric likely to make of Hugo's mode of transport?

Exercise 2

Create your own dossier using the same headings.

The future subjunctive

The future subjunctive is used to translate the future but – unlike the future indicative tense, which makes statements about the future which have an air of probability or certainty – the future subjunctive is used to translate a future which is clouded in uncertainty and doubt and is often heralded by 'when', 'if' or 'as soon as'.

Estará cansada (future indic.)

quando chegar (future subjunc.)

She will be tired (statement)

when she arrives

(it's doubtful when she will arrive)

Forming the future subjunctive

Take the 3rd person plural of any verb in the preterite tense, remove the ending **-ram** and add: **-r -res -r -rmos -rem**

Example

partir partiram to leave

they left (preterite) → parti + above endings

eu partir
tu partires
ele/a partir
você partir
nós partirmos
eles/as partirem
vocês partirem

The future perfect subjunctive

The future perfect subjunctive, formed by the future subjunctive of the verb **ter** (**tiver**, **tiveres**, **tiver**, **tivermos**, **tiverem**) + past participle, is used in a similar way to the future subjunctive but is not as widely used.

Se não tiveres mandado o pacote amanhã, ficarei muito zangado If you haven't sent the parcel by tomorrow, I will be very angry

Dialogue 1 No Congresso

The four individuals finally meet

Hugo:

Amanhã vou fazer turismo. Pretendo visitar todos

os museus na cidade. Quer ir comigo?

Eric:

Infelizmente, não posso. Amanhã tenho de escrever

um artigo para o meu jornal . . .

MARIA:

Não está a fim de assistir a um curso de pára-

quedismo amanhã?

SARAH:

Ah, obrigada mas não me interesso por esportes.

Por que não nos encontramos mais tarde para

tomar um café?

MARIA:

Combinado!

Vocabulary

fazer turismo

to go sightseeing

pretender

to plan to

quer ir comigo?

do you want to come with me?

um artigo

an article

não está a fim de?

don't you fancy . . .?

assistir a

to attend

um curso de pára-quedismo/

a course in parachuting

saltar de pára-quedas

não me interesso por

I'm not interested in

Por que não nos encontramos

Why don't we meet later?

mais tarde?

combinado!

agreed!

Exercise 3

Can you answer the following questions in Portuguese?

- 1 O que quer fazer o Hugo? (Quer fazer ...)
- 2 O que tem de fazer o Eric no dia seguinte?
- 3 A Maria convida a Sarah a assistir a um curso. Que curso?
- 4 A Sarah aceita ou recusa?

Vocabulary

o dia seguinte um convite

the following day

convidar aceitar

to invite to accept

recusar

to refuse

an invitation

Invitations

Quer ir (ao cinema)?

Do you want to go ...?

Não está a fim de (ir)?

Don't you fancy (going)?

Quer sair comigo?

Do you want to go out with me?

Encontramo-nos mais tarde?

Do you want to meet later?/Let's meet later

Gostaria de o/a convidar .../

Gostaria de convidar você

I'd like to invite you ...

Vens ou não vens?

Are you (familiar) coming or not?

Vou já!

I'm coming! (Use ir (to go), not vir (to come) lit.: 'I'm going there right away')

Accepting and refusing

Aceitar (accepting)

Gostaria muito de (ir/visitar)

I'd really like to (go/visit)

Parece-me uma boa idéia

It seems like a good idea

Por que não?

Why not?

Gostaria muito

I'd like that a lot

(es)tá bom/bem

OK

O que está passando?

What's on? (at the cinema, etc.)

Recusar (refusing)

Infelizmente, não posso

Unfortunately, I can't

Acho que não é possível

I don't think it's possible

Obrigado/a, mas não estou a fim ...

Thanks, but I don't fancy ...

Obrigado/a, mas não me interesso por ...

Thanks, but I'm not a fan of ...

Não posso hoje à noite, já fiz outros planos

I can't tonight, I've already made other plans

Exercise 4

Now it's your turn to speak. Using the information above, make up appropriate responses to the sentences below:

A: Gostaria de a convidar para o jantar hoje à noite

в:

A: Não faz mal! Em vez de hoje à noite, quer ir ao cinema no fim de semana?

в:

A: Um bom filme francês.

в:

Saying how you have been feeling

The verb **andar** ('to walk/to progress') is used idiomatically to express how someone has been feeling lately:

Ando nervoso/a

I've been on edge lately

Andam despreocupados/as

They've been very happy-go-lucky recently

Small talk

If you have just met someone and don't know anything about them, you will want to find out basic things such as: 'Where are you from?', 'What's your name?', 'What do you do?', 'Are you on holiday?' and chat about the weather.

Exercise 5

We have already covered these areas but, just to refresh your memory, here are a few phrases you will need. Unfortunately the English translations have got mixed up, so first you will have to decide which is which:

Tudo bem? Where are you from? Como vai? What's your name? Como se chama? What do you do?

De onde é? The weather is very good/bad

O que faz? Are you on holiday? Está em férias? Is everything OK?

O tempo está muito bom/ruim My name is Chamo-me How are you?

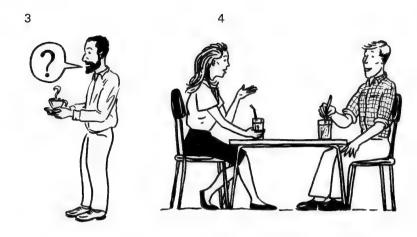
Exercise 6

Now look at the following captions showing different situations where people are meeting for the first time. Using the vocabulary above plus earlier vocabulary, can you create the dialogues suggested by the drawings?





1. Q:	 A:	
2. O:	A:	



3. Q:	 A:	
4. Q:	 A:	

5 6







5. Q:	A:
6. Q:	A:

What sort of person are you?

Sou ... I am ... vivo/a (or: alegre) lively dynamic dinâmico/a ambicioso/a ambitious falador/a talkative trabalhador/a hardworking efficient eficiente honesto/a honest desonesto/a dishonest calmo/a quiet preguiçoso/a lazy

The personal infinitive

We are now familiar with infinitives such as **ser**, **ter** and **comer**. Unique to the Portuguese language is another infinitive called the personal or inflected infinitive which is a 'personalized' infinitive with personal or individual endings. It is simple to form. Take any infinitive and add the endings:

-es -mos -em

beber*mos*

In fact, there are only three endings to learn.

Example: The personal infinitive of beber:

beber I drink (my drinking)
beberes you drink (your drinking)
beber he/she drinks, you drink
(his/her/your drinking)

(his/her/your drinking) we drink (our drinking)

beberem they, you (pl) drink

(their/your drinking)

The personal infinitive generally follows a preposition.

Uses of the personal infinitive

1 It helps to avoid confusion about who is being referred to. Here the ordinary infinitive is used:

depois de partir = after (I, he, she, etc.?) left. Who exactly left? You, him, them? Use of the personal infinitive helps to specify who it was who left:

depois de partirem = after they left

(lit.: after their leaving)

Verás as montanhas ao chegares

You will see the mountains when you arrive

(lit.: upon your arriving)

2 The personal infinitive can avoid the use of the subjunctive if a preposition replaces the conjunction.

Ele vai telefonar antes que parta (subjunctive)

He is going to telephone before he leaves

Ele vai telefonar antes de partir (personal infinitive)

In impersonal expressions such as $\acute{\mathbf{E}}$ preciso (it is needed) or $\acute{\mathbf{E}}$ pena (it is a pity) and verbs such as lamentar (to be sorry) the conjunction que does not need to be replaced by a preposition:

É preciso que estejam lá (subjunctive)

They must be there

É preciso estarem lá (personal infinitive)

They must be there

É pena que ela não esteja aqui (subjunctive)

It is a pity that she is not here

É pena ela não estar aqui (personal infinitive)

It is a pity that she is not here

Lamento que ela tenha tantos problemas (subjunctive)

I'm sorry that she has so many problems

Lamento ela ter tantos problemas (personal infinitive)

I'm sorry that she has so many problems

Dialogue 2 As férias

At the conference, talk turns to how the four spent their holidays last year and what their plans are for this year

Hugo: Nas minhas férias do ano passado eu fui ao Canadá. Vi

as Cataratas do Niagara. Eram lindas! Passei lá o dia

inteiro ...

SARAH: Eu também vi as Cataratas há três anos!

ERIC: No ano passado eu queria ir aos Estados Unidos. Mas,

infelizmente, tive de cancelar por razões de trabalho.

Maria: Não pode ir lá este verão? Este ano eu gostaria de visitar

a França ... No ano passado passei as minhas férias na

África do Sul.

Vocabulary

o ano passado	last year	vi	I saw
fui	I went	visitei	I visited
passei	I spent	eram lindas	they were lovely
há três anos	three years ago	não pode?	can't you?
queria ir	I wanted to go	tive de cancelar	I had to cancel
gostaria de visitar	I'd like to visit	África do Sul	South Africa
passei lá o dia inte	eiro	I spent the who	le day there
por razões de trab	r razões de trabalho for work reasons		

Exercise 7

Translate the following passage:

No ano passado passei férias maravilhosas na praia. O tempo estava muito bom e eu fiquei¹ numa pensão muito perto da praia. Gostei imensamente do mar e de todas as pessoas que encontrei. Espero regressar lá um dia.

¹ **fiquei** and not **ficei**. To retain the 'hard **c**' sound (like the English 'k'), the **c** changes to **qu**. (This is an example of an orthography-changing verb, i.e. one which alters its spelling to maintain its original sound.) The rest of the verb in the preterite is as normal:

fiquei ficaste ficou ficamos ficaram

Vocabulary

na praiaon the beachférias maravilhosasgreat holiday

o tempo estava muito bom the weather was really good

fiquei

o mar

the sea

really near

gostei imensamente de ...

todas as pessoas que encontrei

espero regressar lá um dia

I stayed

the sea

really near

I really liked ...

all the people I met

I hope to go back one day

Exercise 8

With the help of the additional vocabulary given below, can you create a short paragraph in Portuguese similar to that in Exercise 7 for each of the following holiday-makers:

1 Last year I had a great holiday in the mountains. The weather was very bad and I stayed in a youth hostel.

2 Last year I had a great holiday in the city of Paris. The weather was good and I stayed in a hotel.

3 Last year I had a great holiday in the lakes. The weather was great and I stayed in a **pousada** (deluxe inn).

Vocabulary

nas montanhasin the mountainsnos lagosat the lakesna cidade de Parisin the city of Paris

péssimoawfulótimogreatbomgoodmuito ruimvery bado hotelhotel

a pousada (deluxe inn)

a pousada da juventude/ youth hostel

o albergue da juventude

Hints for reading in a foreign language

1 First read through, trying to get the general gist.

2 Use any extra information which might be present, for example, illustrations and subheadings.

3 Try not to use the dictionary at first but do try to guess the general meaning by focusing first on words which seem similar in English. For instance, you might have already noticed similarites between words which end in '-tion' in English and -ção in Portuguese:

condição condition ambição ambition

or words ending in '-able' in English and -ável in Portuguese:

confortáveldeploráveldeplorable

4 If a particular word in Portuguese looks familiar but you can't remember the English equivalent, try saying it out loud. For instance **condição**, when pronounced, sounds like: 'condeesow'. This should then lead you to the English word 'condition'.

Exercise 9

Below is a list of words in English and a list in Portuguese. Using the above information can you provide in column 1 the Portuguese equivalent and in column 2, the English equivalent. The first two have been done for you.

1 borrible (horrível) nação (nation) deplorable variable solution petition 2 nação (nation) lamentável incomparável perfeição confortável

A word of caution ...

Unfortunately, this 'system' won't work for every word! For example, the English word 'marketable' translates as **comercializavel**.

Prefixes

The English 'un-' (unhappy, unfortunately, etc.) translates as the following:

in- as in: inoportuno untimely unthinkable ir- as in: irrepetível unrepeatable des- as in: desfavorável unfavourable

English 'in-' translates as:

in- as in: incidente incident incapacity

Exercise 10

Now try to translate the following without the aid of your dictionary:

incessante, impulsivo, impossível, impulso, impreciso, imperceptível, imparcial, impetuoso

Exercise 11

Read this short passage then answer the questions which follow:

Para ir à fábrica vou de trem até Bauru e depois pego um ônibus para a cidade. Esta manhã peguei um táxi. Este ano pretendo ir ao Recife. Mas, possivelmente, só irei lá no fim do verão.

1 How does the writer get to the factory?

2 What did he do this morning?

3 What are his holiday plans and when is he going?

Vocabulary

até Bauru to Bauru pego I catch peguei I caught

no fim do verão at the end of summer

só irei lá I will only go pretendo ir I intend to go

How much can you remember?

- 1 Can you give the Portuguese for: my favourite drink, my favourite hobby, lawyer, librarian, profession
- 2 Write out the future subjunctive of falar 'to speak'.
- **3** Give three ways of refusing an invitation and three ways of accepting.
- 4 In Portuguese, how would you introduce yourself, ask someone their name and where they are from?
- 5 Name four qualities you consider yourself to have.
- 6 What do these translate as? um convite, eu não dirijo, o congresso, trabalhador, calmo, eficiente, assistir a
- 7 Translate into Portuguese:

Last year I visited Belgium. The weather was great. I stayed in a hotel near the beach. It was very comfortable. I'd like to go to Cuba this year. Two years ago I went to Greece.

12 Exmo. Senhor...

Dear Sir . . .

In this lesson you will learn about:

- setting up a business meeting by phone
- writing formal and informal letters
- office equipment
- business terms

Dialogue 1 Marcar uma reunião

Sr Dias calls Sr Silva on his mobile phone (o seu celular)

SR DIAS: Alô?

SECRETÁRIA: Alô. Antônio Silva e Companhia Limitada, bom

dia. Com quem gostaria de falar?

SR DIAS: Bom dia. Aqui fala Alberto Dias. Posso falar com

o Sr Silva, por favor?

Secretária: Desculpe, mas o Sr Silva ainda não chegou.

SR DIAS: Oh, que azar! Tenho um assunto urgente a tratar

com ele e preciso de marcar uma reunião junta-

mente com o meu sócio.

Secretária: Está bem. Eu posso marcar a reunião. Pode ser

amanhã às três horas?

SR DIAS: Muito bem. Então, fica combinado. Até amanhã às

três.

Vocabulary

O celular companhia limitada limited company (ele) ainda não chegou has not arrived yet que azar! what bad luck!

marcar uma reunião to arrange/fix up an appointment

preciso de I need/have to o sócio partner iuntamente com together with

Eu posso marcar a reunião I can arrange the meeting pode ser? does it suit/is it convenient?

então, fica combinado so, that's agreed

Tenho um assunto urgente a tratar com ele I have an urgent matter to discuss with him

Talking on the phone

Revise the section 'Making a call from a phone box' in Lesson 8. Remember, when speaking on the phone, to use the following:

(you are the caller) (you are the recipient of the call)

Alô? (Pt Está?)

Alô (Pt Estou)

(Hello?/Are you there?) (Hello/I'm here)

Once you get through:

Aqui fala ...

or simply fala ... (name) This is ...

Posso falar com ... (name)? Can I speak to ...?

Pode falar mais devagar? Can you speak more slowly? Do you speak English?

Desculpe, eu não falo Sorry, I don't speak Portuguese

português muito bem very well **Telefono mais tarde** I'll phone later

Gostaria de cancelar a minha I'd like to cancel my meeting with ...

reunião com ...

Exercise 1

Try to translate this short telephone conversation into Portuguese:

JANE: Hello? Can I speak to the manager?

COMPANY: I'm afraid he hasn't come in yet. Is it urgent?

JANE: I'm sorry, can you speak more slowly please, I don't

speak Portuguese very well.

COMPANY: Ah! Hold on. The manager has just arrived.

Vocabulary

Queria/posso falar com ...? Could/can I speak to?

o gerente the manager É urgente? Is it urgent? não desligue hold on

Exercise 2

Below is a transcript of a telephone conversation. Owing to the poor line, however, parts of the conversation are indistinct. Using the vocabulary below, can you complete the missing spaces to find out what is being said?

SR COELHO: ...?
SECRETÁRIA: Alô.

SR COELHO: Aqui fala o Sr Coelho. Posso falar . . . o Sr Costa?

É muito ...

Secretária: ..., mas o Sr Costa ... no Rio em negócios.

SR COELHO: Rio! Que ...! Eu estou falando do Rio!

Secretária: Qual... o nome da sua ...?

SR COELHO: Coelho e Irmão.

Secretária: Não entendo. Está marcada na agenda uma ...

para hoje no Rio ... o Senhor Costa e Coelho e

Irmão.

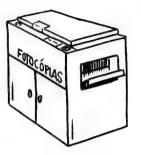
(a moment later . . .)

SR COELHO: Ah! Só um ... O Sr Costa já chegou!

entre é desculpe urgente alô com azar minuto companhia reunião está

Exercise 3

Below are some pieces of equipment you can find in an office. From the list below try to match the correct Portuguese word with the item it represents.













o disquete o computador o fax o teclado
a máquina de escrever o telefone a máquina de xerox

Vocabulary

o computador computer
a informática computing
o software software
o hardware hardware

a tela (Pt o écran) screen (computer)

a unidade de disquete
o banco de dados
a fragmentadora/picotadora
o calculador
o arquivo
disk drive
database
shredder
calculator
file

o líquido corretor correction fluid

o papel paper
os envelopes envelopes
a caneta/o lápis pen/pencil
o cartão de negócios business card

homem/mulher de negócios business man/woman

a viagem de negócios business trip

Correspondence

Fax and memo

17474			
Para:			
Fax Número:			
De: Fax Nº:			,
Data: Ref: .			
No. de páginas:			

FΔX

MEMORANDO											
Para:											
De: .											
Data:											
Ref:											

Vocabulary

para to

para a atenção de for the attention of

de from
data date
ref (referência) reference

no. de páginas number of pages

Posso enviar esta carta por fax/por e-mail? Can I fax/e-mail this letter?

Letters

1 Formal business letters

English salutation Portuguese Endings salutation

Dear Sir Dear Sirs Dear Madam Dear Mr (Lopes) Dear Mrs (Lopes)	Exmo. Senhore Exmos. Senhores Exma. Senhora Exmo. Sr Lopes Exma. Sra Lopes	Subscrevo-me de V. Exa(s)., Atenciosamente Yours faithfully or Yours sincerely (from one person) or Subscrevemo-nos de V. Exa(s)., Atenciosamente Yours faithfully or Yours sincerely (from more than one person)
Messrs	Ilmos. Senhores	Subscrevemo-nos de V. Sas., Atenciosamente

2 Informal business letters

English salutation Portuguese

salutation

Endings

Dear Sir Dear Sirs Dear Madam Dear Sirs (<i>lit.</i> : Dear friends and sirs)	Prezado Senhor Prezados Senhores Prezada Senhora Prezados Amigos e Senhores	Subscrevo-me de V. Sa(s)., Atenciosamente Yours faithfully or Yours sincerely (from one person) or
Dear José Dear Ester	Caro José Cara Ester	Subscrevemo-nos de V. Sa(s)., Atenciosamente Yours faithfully or Yours sincerely (from more than one person)

Notes

- 1 Exmo./Exma./Exmos./Exmas. = Excelentíssimo/a/os/as = Most excellent Sir/Madam, etc.
- 2 In Brazil other equivalents of Exmo., etc. are:

Hmo./Ilma./Ilmos./Ilmas. = Ilustríssimo/a/os/as

- = Most Illustrious Sir/Madam, etc.
- 3 V. Exa(s). = Vossa(s) Excelência(s) = Your Excellency(ies)
- 4 V. Sa(s). = Vossa(s) Senhoria(s) = Your Lordship(s)
- 5 Ilmos. = Messrs, is used in both Portugal and Brazil
- 6 Cordialmente can replace Atenciosamente

Addresses

1 Formal:

In Brazil

Ilma. Sra. Isabel Nunes Av. Princesa Isabel, 370 Apto. $62 - 6^{\circ}$ andar 22011-010 Rio de Janeiro RJ Brasil

In Portugal

Exmo. Sr. J. Simões Rua do Brasil, 61-3° esq 3900 Condeixa Portugal

Notes

- 1 Normally after the number of the street, lane, etc., you will see: 1° 2° 3° andar = 1st 2nd 3rd floor, etc. or térreo (ground floor)
 - apto = apartamento apartment

r/c = rés do chão ground floor (Pt)

dto = direito right (Pt)

esq = esquerdo left (Pt)

- 2 The street name comes first, followed by the number
- 3 The post code comes before the city name
- 4 After the city name comes the state name in full or abbreviated

2 Informal:

In both Portugal and Brazil

Sr. Jorge Gomes Praça dos Pombais, 1 r/c dto 7654 Caia Portugal

Sra. D.I. Castro Beco das Flores, 6 8874 Campo Grande Angola

Um postal

A postcard ...

Queridos Maria e Jorge,
um simples postal para
dizer gue esperamos
poder retribuir um dia
todas ao suas atmosos
na Madura. Aqui em
Uberaba, está chorendo...
Que ehatice!

Muitas saudades e
abraços,
Graça e Paulo.

Exmo Se Jorge e
Sra. D. Maria Sopes
Rua do Mar,
41-1º dto
3400
Madura.

Vocabulary

Sr. e Sra. D. Mr and Mrs D. = Dona Mrs or Miss Ouerido/a/os/as Dear ... (informal) esperamos poder we hope to be able retribuir um dia to pay you back one day all your kindness todas as suas atenções here in Uberaba aqui em Uberaba está chovendo it's raining what a bind/pain/nuisance! que chatice! muitas saudades e abraços missing you and sending much love

beijos kisses/hugs cumprimentos best wishes

Note: for a more courteous approach, although this is an informal postcard, use the **Exmo**. form.

Exercise 4

Now fill in the blanks in this postcard:

2 de abril	via aérea
Ester, a tua earta Descobri o livro que precisas numa livraria de segunda mão, sorte! .um bejo da, Teresa.	Sra. D. Estir Soares Rua Tiradentes, 370 36700-000 Leopoldina M6

pequena ontem que recebi amiga querida

Exercise 5

Below is an example of a business letter in Portuguese which has been partially translated into English. Firstly, try to fill in the missing words in English then answer the questions which follow. A full translation of the letter is at the end of the lesson.

A C Brito & Cia. Lda. Avenida Liberdade São Paulo

n/Ref: CJK/LN

São Paulo, 14 de Julho de 2001

v/Ref: L0098

Exmos. Senhores Costa & Cia. Lda. Rua Visconde de Pirajá, 56 22410-003 Rio de Janeiro RJ

Prezados Amigos e Senhores,

Acusamos o recebimento da v/estimada carta de 4 do corrente na qual V. Sas. nos pedem para organizarmos uma reunião para discutir as nossas necessidades de novas encomendas dos vossos produtos.

Apresentamos nossas desculpas por esta demora em vos responder. Contudo, achamos que podemos marcar uma reunião para o dia 25 do mês e enviaremos por fax a V. Sas. a confirmação desta data.

Entretanto, aguardando o prazer da v/visita a esta cidade, subscrevemo-nos, com os nossos mais respeitosos cumprimentos.

De V. Sas., Atenciosamente

Diretor Adjunto acbrito@bol.com.br

Dear Sirs

We thank you for your ... of the 4th inst. in which you ask us to ... a meeting in order ... our need for new orders of your ...

We ... for the ... in replying. However, we think that we can ... a meeting for the 25 of the ... and we will send ... of this ... by fax.

In the meantime, we look forward to the ... of your visit to this ... Kind regards,

Yours sincerely

Assistant Director

- 1 The letter is in response to one sent by Costa & Co. on 8 July true or false?
- 2 Costa & Co. want to arrange a meeting to buy products from Brito & Co. true or false?
- 3 What does Brito & Co. apologize for?
- 4 What will Brito & Co. do to confirm the meeting?

More on business letters . . .

Some useful phrases:

Queiram aceitar nossas desculpas ...

Please accept my apologies ...

Solicitamos-lhe o favor de ...

Please be so kind as to ...

Agradeço-lhe que se digne . . .

I should be very grateful if you would ...

Sinto muito comunicar-lhe que ...

I regret to have to inform you that ...

Envie-mo quanto antes . . .

Please send me as soon as possible ...

De acordo com ...

In accordance with ...

Exercise 6

Read the following dialogue and then answer the questions which follow:

COELHO: Sei que o senhor está interessado em utensílios de

metal para uso caseiro. Temos vários modelos de

panelas e talheres de aco inoxidável.

PEREIRA: Sim. Estou de fato interessado. Trouxe-me um

catálogo?

COELHO: Trouxe. Esses talheres são de primeira qualidade. E

aqui tem as nossas listas de precos também.

Vocabulary

estar interessado em to be interested in utensílios de metal metal utensils para uso caseiro for domestic use vários modelos various models

panelas e talheres de aco

inoxidável

Trouxe-me um catálogo?

Did you bring me a catalogue?

pans and stainless steel cutlery

de primeira qualidade

of the finest quality

listas de preços price lists

1 What does Sr Coelho sell?

2 Is Sr Pereira interested in his products?

3 Sr Pereira asks if Sr Coelho has brought - what?

4 Sr Coelho points out a certain product in the catalogue. What does he say about it?

5 What else has he brought?

Business terms

a gestão administration o servico pós-venda after-sales service o custo médio average cost o saldo balance

bear/bull (market) o especulador o mercado negro black market anular to cancel

cash flow os fluxos de fundos/de caixa a concorrência competition competitor o concorrente

a procura (de consumo) (consumer) demand

o contrato contract

redigir um contrato to draw up a contract

o cálculo de custos costing o controle de crédito credit control os clientes customers o acordo deal

to strike a deal fechar o negócio

delivery a entrega

a data de entrega/o prazo de entrega date of delivery desenvolver to develop

development (area) (zona de) desenvolvimento

discount o desconto to dispatch expedir distributor o distribuidor goods os gêneros head office a sede social/a matriz importer o importador to import importar to invest investir o investimento investment loan o empréstimo to lend emprestar a gerência/direção management

managing director o diretor geral (Pt o director geral)

marketing o marketing market research

a análise de mercados/a pesquisa de

mercado

meeting a reunião minutes as atas (Pt as actas) to negotiate negociar negotiable negociável outlay a despesa percentage a percentagem to produce produzir producer o produtor profit o ganho/o lucro profitability a rentabilidade proposal a proposta

quota a quota receipt o recibo reimburse reembolsar report o relatório at retail a varejo (Pt a retalho) retailer o varejista (Pt o retalhista) sales as vendas sales contract o contrato de compra e venda sales manager o gerente de vendas sample a amostra signature a assinatura small firm a pequena empresa statistics as estatísticas

o estoque stock
a Bolsa stock market
o fornecedor/o abastecedor supplier

a oferta e a procura supply and demand

os objetivos (Pt os objectivos)
a feira industrial
a transação (Pt a transacção)
transporte
o movimento
targets
trade fair
transaction
transport
turnover

o subdesenvolvimento underdevelopment

o ICM (Pt o IVA) VAT a mão-de-obra/a força de trabalho workforce

Exercise 7

Can you translate the following passages into English and then answer the questions which follow. Try not to look at the vocabulary until the very last minute!

A língua portuguesa

A língua portuguesa é falada não só no Brasil, mas também em Portugal (na Europa), na Guiné-Bissau, Angola, Moçambique e nas ilhas de Cabo Verde e São Tomé e Príncipe (em África), Goa, Damão e Diu (na Índia), Macau (na China) e Timor.

O português é mais falado do que o francês. A língua portuguesa é a quinta língua mais falada no mundo. Cerca de 180 milhões de pessoas falam português.

- 1 Portuguese is only spoken in Brazil and Portugal. True or false?
- 2 Are there more French speakers than Portuguese speakers?
- 3 Approximately how many people speak Portuguese?
- 4 Portuguese is the seventh most widely spoken language in the world. True or false?

Vocabulary

a língua language é falada is spoken

não só no Brasil not only in Brazil

mas tambémbut alsoilhasislandsEuropaEurope

é mais falado do que o francês is more spoken than French

a quinta língua mais falada no the fifth most spoken language in the

mundo world cerca de around

Translation of the letter from Brito & Co.

Dear Sirs

We thank you for your letter of the 4th inst. in which you ask us to organize a meeting in order to discuss our need for new orders of your products.

We apologize for the delay in replying. However, we think that we can arrange a meeting for the 25th of the month and we will send confirmation of this date by fax.

In the meantime, we look forward to the pleasure of your visit to this city.

Kind regards,

Yours sincerely

Assistant Director acbrito@bol.com.br

13 A Internet

The Internet

In this lesson you will learn about:

- accessing the Internet
- corresponding by e-mail
- the uses of a mobile phone
- revision some exercises!

Exercise 1 No computador (At the computer)

visitar um site de turismo

At home, Joana is working on her new computer. Can you place the correct expressions from the box below into the gaps in the text to discover what she intends to do whilst online.

Em primeiro lugar, vou	para•		
Depois	para conferir o meu saldo.		
	Ah! Não há mensagens		
Vou enviar pa	ra a minha irmã que faz aniversário hoje.		
Finalmente, vou	e reservar um hotel em Salvador.		
vou checar o meu e-ma	il digitar a minha senha um cartão virtual		

vou ao site do meu banco

Vocabulary

em primeiro lugar
digitar a minha senha¹
entrar na Net²
depois
depois disso
ir ao site / visitar o site
o site do banco
conferir o saldo
checar o meu e-mail
(in full: o correio eletrônico
não há mensagens
(also: não tenho mails
enviar um cartão virtual
um site de turismo
reservar um hotel

firstly
key in my password
to access the Net
next
after that
to go/ to visit the site
the bank site
to check the balance
to check my e-mail
electronic mail)
there are no messages
I don't have any mail)
to send a virtual card
a tourism information site
to book a hotel room

also: a minha password a minha palavra-chave (Pt) password

2 also: entrar na rede



Exercise 2

Imagine you are Joana. In an effort to remember your movements on the computer, you have written down each step. These steps are written in English below. Try to translate them into Portuguese using the Preterite tense. (See **Lesson 3** for an explanation on how to form the Preterite).

1	Firstly I keyed in my password
2	Next I went to my bank site to check my balance
3	After that I checked my mail

5 Finally, I visited a tourism information site

Exercise 3

4 I sent a virtual card to my sister

Read the following passage about Internet usage in Brazil and see if you can answer the questions which follow.

Com mais de 4 milhões de assinantes, a Internet no Brasil atrai milhares de internautas por dia. A maioria dos usuários visita os sites da internet à noite, quando o preço da ligação telefônica é mais baixo. Depois das dez da noite, as salas de bate-papo ficam lotadas e a rede fica mais lenta.

Vocabulary

atrai (verbo atrair) it attracts (verb to attract)
internauta (m/f) the internet user (analogy of astronaut)

a ligação telefônica telephone call preço mais baixo lower price as salas de bate-papo (also: salas de chat)

lotadas crowded a rede the net slower

1 How many subscribers of the Internet are there in Brazil?

2 Can you pick out the word for "users" in Portuguese?

3 What factor contributes to so many people in Brazil using the Internet at night?

4 True or False: After 10pm it is faster to access and browse the Internet although the chat rooms are crowded.

Exercise 4

Many expressions connected with computers and the Internet in Portuguese are similar, or exactly the same, as those in English. Can you match up the Portuguese expression on the left with its correct translation in English on the right?

a(s) sala(s) de chat	the Net
o scanner	program
a Tecnologia de Informação	online banking
o banco online	to surf the Internet
o browser	online shopping
o hacker ³	chat room(s)
o provedor da Internet	browser
navegar na Internet ⁴	to search
o Shopping online	scanner
a Not (om a rada)	Information Tooknology

a Net (or: a rede) Information Technology

o modem hacker

buscar search engine

o engenho de busca modem

o programa Internet Provider

Exercise 5

In Rio de Janeiro, Juliana is sending an e-mail to her company's overseas office in Portugal. The e-mail has been translated into English below – but not all of it! With the aid of the partial translation and the vocabulary that follows, can you fill in the blanks to decipher why Juliana is writing to Ester? You will find a full translation of the e-mail in the exercise key.

³ also: o pirata informático computer pirate

⁴ also: surfar na Net

Juliana Ramos, 24/8/01 18.20

página 1 de 1

De: Juliana Ramos@digibanco.com.br **Para**: Ester Soares@digimais.com.pt

Enviado: Sexta-feira, 24 de Agosto de 2001 18.20

Assunto: Vídeo Conferência

Ouerida Ester

Poderia por favor organizar uma vídeo conferência entre os escritórios de Lisboa e Rio para quinta-feira, 6 de Setembro, a fim de discutirmos a estratégia de vendas para o ano que vem?

A propósito, muito obrigada pela página da Web que você construiu para o escritório do Rio – parece muito melhor! Agora, é tão fácil para entrar e download a informação, e os gráficos são excelentes!

Conforme pedido, envio como attach a lista dos nossos fornecedores de DVD na América do Sul.

Um grande abraço Juliana Ramos Diretora Executiva

Translation: Dear Ester

a	video conference for	
between the Lisbon and	d Rio,,	next year's
	for you buil	
- it looks much better:	Now it is so	to
and	information, and the gra	phics are excellent
As requested, South America.	the list of	ir

All the best, Juliana Ramos Sales Executive

Vocabulary

Enviar um e-mail

to send an e-mail

enviado assunto organizar os escritórios

sent subject to set up

os escritórios entrar (also: acessar)

offices to access

a fim de

in order to

construir uma página da Web download (a informação) to build a Web page to download (information)

envio como attach

I attach

enviar como attach

to send an attachment

(also: enviar um attachment)

os nossos fornecedores

our suppliers

O email E-mail

(a) If you have the recordings, listen to this Brazilian e-mail address being read aloud:

carolinaribeiro@bol.com.br "carolinaribeiro arroba bol ponto com ponto br"

(b) Following the same pattern, now try to read aloud this Brazilian e-mail address. You will find the correct sequence at the bottom of the page

marcelovargas@dialdata.com.br

Dialogue 1 O shopping online

Dora chats about the merits of online shopping with a work colleague, Eduardo.

EDUARDO:

No fim de semana fui a quatro livrarias diferentes e nenhuma delas tinha o livro que eu queria. No fim, tive que o encomendar. Mas que perda de tempo!

⁽b) 'marcelovargas arroba dialdata ponto com ponto br'

Dora: Eu também fui às compras. Comprei um CD para

dar à minha amiga de presente de aniversário e um bouquet de flores para a minha tia que está no hospital – tudo isto sem necessidade de sair de

casa.

EDUARDO: Ah, já sei ... você usou o shopping online! ... Mas

é seguro fornecer os detalhes do seu cartão de

crédito pela internet?

DORA: Ah sim, é cem por cento garantido. Tenho o e-

card, que é um cartão exclusivo para compras na Internet. Nesta semana eu até reservei um vôo para

Salvador online. É super prático!

Vocabulary

No fim de semana at the weekend as livrarias bookshops nenhuma delas none of them tive que o encomendar I had to order it fui às compras I went shopping comprei I bought

sem necessidade de sair de casa without setting foot outside

Ah, já sei ... Ah, now I see ...

segurosafefornecerto provideos detalhesthe details

cem por cento garantido one hundred per cent guaranteed

exclusivo exclusive

até reservei um vôo I even booked a flight

Exercise 6

With the help of the vocabulary in Dialogue 1, can you translate the following sentences into Portuguese:

- 1 He ordered 5 books online
- 2 She buys all her CDs on the Internet
- 3 They provide their credit card details
- 4 You booked a flight to Salvador online

A World Wide Web The World Wide Web

If you have access to the Internet, why not try looking at the following Brazilian sites, available on 'A World Wide Web'. (In Portuguese, this translates as 'A Rede de Alcance Mundial', hence A World Wide Web)

www.revistaveja.com.br	for news on all things Brazilian
www.guiadepraias.com.br	for news on beaches and surfing
www.malasika.com.br	for hints on shopping, exchange rates, etc
www.passeio.com.br	for news on where to stay, tourism, etc
www.cetsp.com.br	for news on traffic
www.submarino.com.br	virtual bookshop
www.radiobandeirantes.com.br	for news, music, etc
www.tvglobo.com.br	main TV network in Brazil
O	(Rede Globo)

Some Brazilian newspapers to try:

Daily: (Diário)

O Diário de Notícias www.diarionoticias.com.br
O Dia www.odia.com.br
O Globo www.oglobo.com.br
Jornal do Brasil www.jornaldobrasil.com.br
Gazeta Esportiva www.gazetaesportiva.com.br

Weekly: (Semanal)

O Nacional www.onacional.com.br Balcão www.balcao.com.br

Exercise 7

Which web site would you access if you wanted to:

- a) ouvir as notícias
- b) reservar um quarto de hotel
- c) comprar livros



Exercise 8

1 Look at the following expressions in Portuguese relating to e-mail. Insert against each expression the correct English translation from the box below.

to key in your password to send a message I don't have any mail to send an attachment my e-mail address to check your e-mail

2 Now, read the following sentence and try to find out what Alberto used his e-mail for on one special occasion.

O ano passado, o Alberto enviou por e-mail um cartão de Natal virtual a todos os seus colegas de trabalho.

Exercise 9

Francisco is in the middle of a busy day at work. Read the passage below and see if you can answer the questions that follow.

Francisco pega o celular⁵ e consulta na base de dados dos seus clientes o nome da pessoa com quem tem a próxima entrevista. Depois da entrevista, ele consulta a agenda eletrônica e confirma que tem um almoço com um cliente importante na sexta que vem. Liga para a Churrascaria Brasil e reserva uma mesa para sexta-feira, às duas horas da tarde.

- 1 Francisco wants to find out the name of the client with whom he has his next interview. How does he do this?
- 2 How does Francisco find out who he has a lunch appointment with later that week?
- 3 Finally, who does Francisco ring and for what reason?
- 5 o telemóvel (Pt) mobile phone

Vocabulary

pega o celular (he) picks up the mobile phone

a base de dados database os clientes clients

the next interview a próxima entrevista a agenda eletrônica electronic diary he dials/rings/calls . . .

liga para ...

a churrascaria restaurante specializing in barbecued dishes

e-commerce

Some more computer terms

a impressora printer a informática computing a janela window a memória memory clicar to click on search engine o engenho de busca download to download o arquivo document / file o CD-ROM CD-ROM o comércio eletrônico

o disco rígido hard disk o disquete floppy disk o DVD DVD

o laptop / o palmtop laptop / palmtop

o monitor monitor
o PC PC
o mouse mouse
o vírus virus
upload (to)upload

How would you manage in these situations?

1 Based on Lessons 1 and 2:

- 1 You are in a café in Rio and have to call the waiter over and order a beer, a strong black coffee, a cake and a cheese sandwich.
- 2 You get talking to a stranger at the next table by asking him the time. You introduce yourself, tell him where you come from and what you do and ask where he is from. You tell him you like/dislike Rio/Brazil.

2 Based on Lessons 3 and 4:

- 1 You go into a hotel to ask for a room for three nights with a shower. To save time the clerk fills out the check-in form (a ficha) for you, asking: your name, age, date of birth and where you come from. What replies would you give?
- 2 Later you want to visit the centre of town but manage to lose your way. You stop someone and ask: 'Excuse me, how do I get to the centre?' You cannot understand their reply, however, so you ask them to please speak more slowly.
- 3 Later in the evening you go out for dinner. You call the waiter over and ask for a table for two. From the menu you choose: soup, chicken and salad and a bottle of white wine. When the meal is over you ask for the bill.

3 Based on Lessons 5 and 6:

- 1 You decide you need to buy a sweater as you forgot to pack one. You find a shop, go in and ask to see some sweaters, size 40. You decide you want a blue one and ask how much it is and can you try it on.
- 2 You want to visit the National Museum which is a little bit outside the centre of Rio. As you are in a hurry you hail a taxi. What do you tell the driver?
- 3 Later that day you decide to hire a car to see a bit more of the country. You want a small car for the week. Your next step is to buy petrol. You stop at a small petrol station and ask for a fill-up.

4 Based on Lessons 7 and 8:

- 1 You wake up the following day with a slight toothache and go to the local chemist's, asking if they have something for the pain.
- 2 Later, feeling much better, you go to the post office and ask for 16 stamps for the USA. You also need to change some traveller's cheques at a bank. Whilst you are there you ask what the exchange rate is.

5 Based on Lessons 9, 10 and 11:

- 1 You decide to go to see a play later in the week. Ask for two seats in the stalls and ask what time the play starts.
- 2 In the afternoon you go to see a film. Ask for two tickets. Before the film starts you order two beers.
- 3 Back at the hotel you get talking to a member of staff about where you went on holiday last year (to Italy) and where you are planning to go next year.
- 4 Whilst chatting you decide to mention that the TV in your room is not working and also that there are no towels.

Reference grammar

Nouns and gender

In Portuguese, nouns can be either masculine or feminine:

casa (f) homem (m) moca (f) urso (m) house girl bear man

The ending of a noun gives a clue as to whether it is masculine or feminine. Nouns:

- 1 ending in -o -im -om -um are generally masculine.
- 2 ending in -a -ã -gem -dade -ice -ez -ção -são are generally feminine.

Forming the feminine

If a word in the masculine form ends in -o, then remove this and add an -a:

menina menino boy girl

If the masculine noun ends in a consonant, add an -a:

cantor (m) cantora (f) singer

If the masculine word already ends in an -a there is no change:

journalist (both male and female) jornalista

Plural of nouns

1 Nouns ending in an unstressed vowel, add -s:

mala malas 2 Nouns ending in -r or -z, add -es:

vendedor

vendedores

3 Nouns ending in an -s where the final syllable is stressed, add

país

países

Where the last syllable is not stressed, there is no change:

lápis

lápis

4 Nouns ending in -m becomes -ns:

homem

homens

5 Nouns which end in -ão have three possibilities in the plural:

(a) $-\tilde{a}o \rightarrow \tilde{o}es$

(the most likely possibility)

coleção coleções collection/s organização organizações organization/s

(b) $-\tilde{a}o \rightarrow -\tilde{a}es$

pão

pães

bread/loaves

(c) $-\tilde{a}o \rightarrow -\tilde{a}os$

irmão

irmãos

brother/s

6 Nouns which end in -1 drop the -1 and add -is:

móvel

móveis furniture

Words ending in -il have two possible endings: -is or -eis. This changes according to whether the -il is stressed. If stressed, add -is. If not stressed, add -eis:

barrel/s stressed: barril barris unstressed: fóssil fossil/s fósseis

Articles

The definite article - 'the'

(f) (m)

a

as

(pl) os The definite article agrees in number and gender with the noun it represents.

o livro the book the table

os livros the books as mesas the tables

The indefinite article - 'a, an'

masc fem um uma uns umas

The indefinite article also agrees with the noun it represents.

um jornal a newspaper (m) uma revista a magazine (f)

Adjectives

sing

plural

These agree in gender and number with the word to which they refer and usually follow this word. The feminine is formed by changing the -o on the masculine adjective to an -a:

um filme chato uma peça chata a boring film a boring play

If the adjective ends in an -r then simply add an -a:

falador (m)

faladora (f)

chatty/talkative

Plurals of adjectives

If the adjective ends in a vowel, add -s:

masculine:

feminine:

honesto (s) \rightarrow **honesta** honestos (pl) \rightarrow **honestas**

 $(-o \rightarrow -a)$ $(-os \rightarrow -as)$

If the adjective ends in an -e, simply add -s:

 $triste \rightarrow$

tristes

(both m and f)

For other adjective plurals follow the rules for the plural of nouns.

Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns

This That That These Those Those

ms	este	esse	aquele
fs ·	esta	essa	aquela
mpl	estes	esses	aqueles
fpl	estas	essas	aquelas
	isto	isso	aquilo

Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Singular:

fs fpl mpl ms My, mine as minhas o meu a minha os meus your a tua os teus as tuas o teu his, her, o seu a sua os seus as suas your

Plural:

	ms	fs	mpl	fpl
our	o nosso	a nossa	os nossos	as nossas
your (vós)	o vosso	a vossa	os vossos	as vossas
their,	o seu	a sua	os seus	as suas
your				

These possessive adjectives change according to the *object* referred to and not the owner of the object.

her car o seu carro their car o seu carro
her pens as suas canetas his pens as suas canetas
my books os meus livros my pens as minhas canetas

Personal pronouns

eu vou (m + f)tu vou (m + f)você o senhor you (m) you (f) a senhora he, it ele she, it ela nós we you (mpl + fpl) vocês you (mpl) os senhores you (fpl) as senhoras they (mpl) eles elas they (fpl)

These subject pronouns are often omitted in the Portuguese of Brazil as the verb ending gives information about who is being referred to. They can also be used for emphasis:

O senhor Castro? Ele ainda não chegou.

Mr Castro? He hasn't arrived yet (but the others have).

Adverbs

Some common ones are those formed by adding -mente to the end of a feminine adjective.

adverb

duvidoso (ms) duvidosa (fs) → duvidosamente doubtfully

Where there is no change in the feminine adjective, such as those ending in -e or -z, simply add -mente.

adverb

feliz (ms) **feliz** (fs) \rightarrow **felizmente** happily

Prepositions

Some common ones are:

a	to/at
em	in/on
de	of/from
por	by/through

debaixo de em cima de longe de para under/below on top of far from for, to, towards

Questions

Simply use a questioning tone in your voice:

Ela conhece o Paulo She knows Paulo Paulo? Does she know Paulo?

Following a question word such as **como**, **onde** or **quem**, the order of subject and verb changes as in English:

O Paulo está em casa
Onde está o Paulo?

Paulo is at home
Where is Paulo?

Verbs

The infinitive

This is the whole verb (= the English verb 'to run/buy', etc.). Portuguese has three types of verb groups or conjugations and these end in either -ar, -er or -ir. Examples:

comprar to buy decidir to decide beber to drink

The personal infinitive

Portuguese has another infinitive which, as the name suggests, is a 'personalized' infinitive. It is very simple to form. Take any infinitive and add the endings:

-es -mos -em

There are only three endings to learn.

Using the personal infinitive

1 To indicate more clearly the person being referred to:

Depois de partires, o Jorge chegou

After you left (your leaving), Jorge arrived

2 As an alternative to the subjunctive in certain cases, by replacing the conjunction with a preposition:

Estou a preparar uma refeição no caso que venha (subjunctive) I'm preparing the dinner in case he comes

Estou a preparar uma refeição no caso de vir (personal infinitive)

The present indicative

This tense is used to state (a) normal occurrences or (b) facts.

(a) A loja abre às nove horas The shop opens at 9.00 a.m.

(b) Não como fruta

I don't eat fruit

The present indicative endings are added to the stem of the verb (minus the -ar, -er, -ir ending). Examples:

falar to speak beber to drink partir to leave falo bebo parto falas bebes partes fala bebe parte falamos bebemos partimos falam bebem partem

Irregular verbs

Do not follow the above pattern of 'regular' stem + endings. Some of the most frequently used irregular verbs are given at the end of this section.

Orthography-changing verbs

These are verbs which change their spelling in order to maintain their original sound. *Some examples:*

c before $e \rightarrow qu$ (fiquei – from ficar) c before $o \rightarrow c$ (faço – from fazer)

Radical-changing verbs

These are verbs which have changes to their 'root' or 'stem'. This occurs mostly to -ir verbs in the present indicative tense (and, as a result, in the present subjunctive tense). For example, in the eu part of the verb:

 $\mathbf{e} \rightarrow \mathbf{i}$ mentir to lie (eu) minto preferir to prefer sentir to feel (eu) sinto

The present continuous tense

This uses the verb **estar** (to be) + gerund. This tense is used for actions which are in progress and which have an air of continuity about them.

estamos falando we are talking

(i.e. we are in the middle of talking)

estava chorando he was crying

(i.e. he was in the process of crying)

The gerund

This is formed by removing the final -r of any infinitive and adding -ndo and is the equivalent of the English present participle '-ing' in 'running', 'eating', etc.:

dançando dancing cantando singing

Estar + a + infinitive is another way to form the present continuous tense. This method is more common in Portugal: estou a comer I am eating.

The passive

This is formed using either the verb **ser** or **estar** + past participle and is the equivalent of 'was/were':

O livro foi escrito por Jorge Amado (foi from verbo ser = action)
The book was written by Jorge Amado.

O livro estava escrito em inglês (estava from verbo estar = state) The book was written in English

Preterite tense

This is used for actions in the past which are complete:

Ontem comprei um par de sapatos

Yesterday I bought a pair of shoes

To form, remove the -ar, -er or -ir from any regular verb and add:

for -ar verbs: ei aste ou amos aram for -er verbs: i este eu emos eram for -ir verbs: i iste iu imos iram

Imperfect indicative

This past tense is used for events in the past which have no exact time limits, or an habitual action in the past ('he used to ... every summer').

To form, remove the -ar, -er and -ir endings from the three verb conjugations and add:

```
-ar verbs: -ava -avas -ava -ávamos -avam
-er and -ir verbs: -ia -ias -ia -íamos -iam
```

There are four irregular verbs in this tense:

ser	to be	era eras era éramos eram
ter	to have	tinha tinhas tinha tínhamos tinham
vir	to come	vinha vinhas vinha vínhamos vinham
pôr	to put	punha punhas punha púnhamos punham

The future indicative

To form this tense add the following endings to the infinitive of any of the three groups of verbs. The endings are the same for the three groups.

```
    -ei -ás -á -emos -ão
    beber → beberei beberás beberá beberemos beberão
    I shall/will drink, etc.
```

Three exceptions: fazer, dizer, trazer.

The future perfect

Use the future tense of ter (to have) + past participle.

Terão fechado a porta They will have shut the door Terá visto o filme He will have seen the film

The future tense can also result from the present tense of the verb **ir** ('to go') + infinitive. This tense expresses the English 'I'm going to (eat)', 'we are going to (go out)', etc.

Vou visitar uma amiga

I'm going to visit a friend

Vai arrumar a sala

She is going to tidy up the living room

The conditional tense

This expresses the English 'you would go', etc. and is formed by adding one set of endings to all three groups of verbs in their infinitive state:

-ia -ias -ia -íamos -iam

Comprariam a casa
Comeria o bolo

partiríamos

They would buy the house
He would eat the cake
we would leave

Three exceptions: fazer, dizer, trazer.

The conditional perfect tense uses the conditional of the verb **ter** + past participle and is the equivalent of the English 'you would have bought'.

Terias comprado o vestido You would have bought the dress Teríamos visto o filme We would have seen the film

The perfect tense

To form this tense use the present indicative of the verb ter + past participle. This tense expresses repeated events or states in the past which continue to have an effect in the present.

Tenho estado triste

I have been feeling sad (recently and still am)

Temos estudado muito

We have been studying a lot (lately and still are)

The pluperfect tense

This tense expresses the English 'we had (left)' and is formed by the imperfect indicative of **ter** + past participle:

Tinha ouvido a música

He/she/you had listened to the music

Tínhamos partido cedo

We had left early

Note: The simple pluperfect tense also exists, which has the same meaning as the pluperfect above. This tense is never used in speech

but can replace the pluperfect tense in written language. An example of the simple pluperfect:

comprara compraras comprara compráramos compraram

The imperative

This is for commands or instructions:

compra	come	parte	(tu)
compre	coma	parta	(você)
compremos	comamos	partamos	(nós)
comprem	comam	partam	(vocês)

It is formed by removing the -ar, -er or -ir of a verb and adding the above endings. For irregular verbs see verb tables.

The past participle

To form, remove the -ar, -er or -ir endings of any verb, adding:

for -ar verbs: -ado	falado spoken
for -er verbs: -ido	comido eaten
for -ir verbs: -ido	decidido decided

There are a number of irregular past participles. See the irregular verbs at the end of this section.

The subjunctive mood

The present subjunctive

The present subjunctive is used to express something which is open to doubt:

Talvez estude? Perhaps he is studying?

It also expresses an emotional response to situations:

É pena que você não venha It's a shame you're not coming

To form the present subjunctive, take the **eu** part of any present indicative verb, remove the ending and add:

```
for -ar verbs: -e -es -e -emos -em
for -er and -ir verbs: -a -as -a -amos -am
```

ter (pres. indic. tenho): remove the $-o \rightarrow$ tenhtenha, tenhas, tenha, etc.

Não penso que ele coma muito

I don't think that he eats a lot

Imperfect subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive is similar in use to the present subjunctive but indicates situations which are even more remote and uncertain. To form, take the 3rd person plural (eles/elas) of any verb in the preterite tense, remove the -ram ending and add the following endings:

-sse -sses -sse -ssemos -ssem

These endings apply to all three verb groups.

Perfect subjunctive

This is formed from the present subjunctive of **ter** + past participle:

(que) tenha mandado (that) I have sent (que) tenhamos lido (that) we have read

Pluperfect subjunctive

This is formed from the imperfect subjunctive of **ter** + past participle:

Não saberia se ele tivesse visitado o museu

I would not have known if he had visited the museum

Future subjunctive

To form the future subjunctive, start from the 3rd person plural of any verb in the preterite tense, remove the **-ram** and add:

-r -res -r -rmos -rem

The future subjunctive conveys the idea of the future, but one which is uncertain. Whereas in English we can use the present tense to indicate a future event, for example, 'When I arrive, I'll telephone', in Portuguese the future subjunctive is used after 'when' because it is uncertain when I will arrive.

A note on vós

Vós is a personal pronoun meaning 'you' (pl) but it is not used in everyday conversation throughout Brazil and Portugal. Since the vós forms have been omitted from the conjugations in the following section, here is a summary of the endings for these forms in the indicative mood:

	-ar	-er	-ir
present	-ais	-eis	-is
preterite	-astes	-estes	-istes
imperfect	-áveis	-íeis	-íeis
future	-eis	-eis	-eis
conditional	-íeis	-íeis	-íeis

Irregular verbs

Dar ('to give')		Indic	ative mo	ood	
Present	dou	dás	dá	damos	dão
Preterite	dei	deste	deu	demos	deram
Imperfect	dava	davas	dava	dávamos	davam
Future	darei	darás	dará	daremos	darão
Conditional	daria	darias	daria	daríamos	dariam
P. infin.	dar	dares	dar	darmos	darem
Imperative		dá	dê	demos	dêem
Past participle	dado				
		Subji	unctive n	nood	
Present	dê	dês	dê	demos	dêem
Imperfect	desse	desses	desse	déssemos	dessem
Future	der	deres	der	dermos	derem
Dizer ('to say'))	Indic	ative mo	od	
Present	digo	dizes	diz	dizemos	dizem
Preterite	disse	disseste	disse	dissemos	disseram
Imperfect	dizia	dizias	dizia	dizíamos	diziam
Future	direi	dirás	dirá	diremos	dirão
Conditional	diria	dirias	diria	diríamos	diriam
P. infin.	dizer	dizeres	dizer	dizermos	dizerem
Imperative		diz	diga	digamos	digam
Past participle	dito				

Subjunctive mood

Present	diga	digas	diga	digamos	digam
Imperfect	dissesse	dissesses	dissesse	disséssemos	dissessem
Future	disser	disseres	disser	dissermos	disserem
Estar ('to be Present Preterite Imperfect Future Conditional P. infin. Imperative Past particip	estou estive estava estarei estaria estar	Indica estás estiveste estavas estarás estarias estares está estado	está esteve estava estará estaria estar esteja	estamos estávamos estaremos estaríamos estarmos estejamos	estão estiveram estavam estarão estariam estarem estejam

Subjunctive mood

esteja estejamos estejam

estejas

feito

esteja

Present

Past participle

Imperfect	estivesse	estivesses	estivesse	estivéssemo	s estivessem
Future	estiver	estiveres	estiver	estivermos	estiverem
Fazer ('to d	do/make')	Indica	tive mood		
Present	faço	fazes	faz	fazemos	fazem
Preterite	fiz	fizeste	fez	fizemos	fizeram
Imperfect	fazia	fazias	fazia	fazíamos	faziam
Future	farei	farás	fará	faremos	farão
Conditional	l faria	farias	faria	faríamos	fariam
P. infin.	fazer	fazeres	fazer	fazermos	fazerem
Imperative		faz	faça	façamos	façam

Subjunctive mood

Present	faça	faças	faça	façamos	façam
Imperfect	fizesse	fizesses	fizesse	fizéssemos	fizessem
Future	fizer	fizeres	fizer	fizermos	fizerem
Ir ('to go') Present Preterite Imperfect Future Conditional P. infin. Imperative Past particip	vou fui ia irei iria ir	Indicate vais foste ias irás irias ires vai ido	vai vai foi ia irá iria ir vá	vamos fomos íamos iremos iríamos irmos vamos	vão foram iam irão iriam irem vão

Subjunctive mood					
Present Imperfect Future	vá fosse for	vás fosses fores	vá fosse for	vamos fôssemos formos	vão fossem forem
Poder ('to b			ive mood	Tormos	iorem
Present Preterite Imperfect Future Conditional P. infin. Imperative Past particip	posso pude podia poderei poderia poder	podes pudeste podias poderás poderias poderes pode podido	pode pôde podia poderá poderia poder possa	podemos pudemos podíamos poderemos poderíamos podermos possamos	podem puderam podiam poderão poderiam poderem possam
Present Imperfect Future	possa pudesse puder	Subjunt possas pudesses puderes	possa pudesse puder	d possamos pudéssemos pudermos	possam pudessem puderem
Pôr ('to put Present Preterite Imperfect Future Conditional P. infin. Imperative Past particip	ponho pus punha porei poria pôr	Indicati pões puseste punhas porás porias pores põe posto	põe põs punha porá poria pori ponha	pomos pusemos púnhamos poremos poríamos pormos ponhamos	põem puseram punham porão poriam porem ponham
Present Imperfect Future	ponha pusesse puser	•	ponha pusesse puser	d ponhamos puséssemos pusermos	ponham pusessem puserem
Querer ('to y Present Preterite Imperfect Future Conditional P. infin. Imperative Past participl	quero quis queria quererei quereria querer	Indication queres quiseste querias quererás quererias quereres quer querido	quer quis queria quererá quereria quereria querer querer queira	quereremos quereríamos querermos	querem quiseram queriam quererão quereriam quererem queiram

Subjunctive mood					
Present	queira	queiras	queiras	queiramos	queiram
Imperfect	quisesse	quisesses	quisesse	quiséssemos	
Future	quiser	quiseres	quiser	quisermos	quiserem
Ser ('to be')		Indicati	ve mood		
Present	sou	és	é	somos	são
Preterite	fui	foste	foi	fomos	foram
Imperfect	era	eras	era	éramos	eram
Future	serei	serás	será	seremos	serão
Conditional	seria	serias	seria	seríamos	seriam
P. infin.	ser	seres	ser	sermos	serem
Imperative		sê	seja	sejamos	sejam
Past particip	le	sido		· ·	•
		Subjunc	tive mood	1	
Present	seja	sejas	seja	sejamos	sejam
Imperfect	fosse	fosses	fosse	fôssemos	fossem
Future	for	fores	for	formos	forem
		10165	101	Tormos	Torem
Ter ('to have	*	Indicati	ve mood		
Present	tenho	tens	tem	temos	têm
Preterite	tive	tiveste	teve	tivemos	tiveram
Imperfect	tinha	tinhas	tinha	tínhamos	tinham
Future	terei	terás	terá	teremos	terão
Conditional	teria	terias	teria	teríamos	teriam
P. infin.	ter	teres	ter	termos	terem
Imperative		tem	tenha	tenhamos	tenham
Past particip	le	tido			
		Subjunc	ctive mood	1	
Present	tenha	tenhas	tenha	tenhamos	tenham
Imperfect	tivesse	tivesses	tivesse	tivéssemos	tivessem
Future	tiver	tiveres	tiver	tivermos	tiverem
Ver ('to see'			ve mood		
Present	vejo	vês	vê	vemos	vêem
Preterite	vi	viste	viu	vimos	viram
Imperfect	via	vias	via	víamos	viam
Future	verei	verás	verá	veremos	verão
Conditional	veria	verias	veria	veríamos	veriam
P. infin.	ver	veres	ver	vermos	verem
Imperative		vê	veja	vejamos	vejam
Past particip	le	visto			

		Subjur	active mod	od	
Present Imperfect	veja visse	vejas visses	veja visse	vejamos víssemos	vejam vissem
Future	vir	vires	vir	virmos	virem
Vir (to come Present Preterite Imperfect Future Conditional P. infin. Imperative Past particip	venho vim vinha virei viria vir	Indica. vens vieste vinhas virás virias vires vem vindo	tive mood vem veio vinha virá viria vir venha	vimos viemos vínhamos viremos viríamos virmos venhamos	vêm vieram vinham virão viriam virem venham
Tust particip	10		ictive mod	ad.	
Present Imperfect Future	venha viesse vier	venhas viesses vieres	venha viesse vier	venhamos viéssemos viermos	venham viessem vierem

Key to exercises

Lesson 1

2

A: Excuse me, what's your name?

B: My name is Jorge, and what's your name?

A: My name is Luisa, pleased to meet you.

A: Good evening, how is it going?

B: I'm fine, thanks, and you?

A: I'm fine, thanks.

3

ele é, nós somos, vocês são, tu és, eu sou, elas são, você é

4

Oi! Tudo bem? Tudo bem, obrigado/a. Chamo-me ... Como se chama? Você é da França? Ah, você é da Inglaterra! Sou da Holanda. Muito prazer!

5a

Sou brasileira
Sou português
Ele é angolano
Você é inglesa?
Ela é escocesa
Sou holandês
I am Brazilian
I am Portuguese
He is Angolan
Are you English?
She is Scottish
I am Dutch

5b

- 1 Apresento-lhe o Tom; (ele) é da Inglaterra; é inglês
- 2 Apresento-lhe a Gabriella; (ela) é da Itália; é italiana
- 3 Apresento-lhe o Pelé; (ele) é do Brasil; é brasileiro
- 4 Apresento-lhe o Hans; (ele) é da Alemanha; é alemão

6

- 1 Você é inglesa? 2 Sou escocês 3 Ele é português
- 4 Ela é brasileira? 5 Você é angolana

7

- 1 o celular 2 a mulher 3 umas bolachas 4 os relógios
- 5 uns sorvetes 6 as colinas

8

1 umas nuvens 2 os pratos 3 uns pentes 4 as praias

9

1 o tapete 2 a cadeira 3 o lápis 4 uma revista 5 um carro

10

1 Kathleen é irlandesa 4 Ela é holandesa 5 Você (Matthew) é inglês e eu (Jane) sou escocesa 6 Andrew é escocês mas Jules é francês

11

- 1 False. Jorge is from Brazil.
- 2 He says: I'd like you to meet Paulo. He is from Portugal; he's Portuguese.
- 3 He wants to know what nationality Isabel is.
- 4 That Isabel is not Italian, she is Brazilian as well.

12

The missing items are: um sanduíche de queijo, um bolo, uma cerveja, uma água mineral com gás

How much can you remember?

1 Lidia: Como se chama?

noite!

Pablo: Chamo-me Pablo.

Lidia: Você é espanhol?

Pablo: Sou. Sou de Madrid. E você? Lidia: Sou portuguesa, sou de Portugal.

2 At 9 a.m. Bom dia!; At 6 p.m. Boa tarde!; At 11 p.m. Boa

3 Você é inglês? De onde você é? Como se chama? Chamo-me . . .; sou da Itália

- 4 (a) um chope, um guaraná, um cafezinho
 - (b) You would eat um bolo, not the others
 - (c) You would not drink um sanduíche
- 5 1 Boa tarde, como vai?
 - 2 Como se chama?
 - 3 De onde você é?
 - 4 Tudo bem?
 - 5 Qual é a sua nacionalidade?

6 Chamo-me ... Sou ... Sou de ...

7 1 They are Brazilian 2 Rio de Janeiro in Brazil 3 They come to Portugal every year to visit their brother Carlos and Fernanda are Brazilian. They live in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil. They come to Portugal every year to visit their brother José who lives in Oporto.

Lesson 2

1

vivo, vives, vive, vivemos, vivem divido, divides, divide, dividimos, dividem

2

Gosto de roupa; gostamos de fruta; gostam de viajar; gosta do cinema francês; gostas do rádio; gostam das casas modernas

3

Gostam de esportes; gostam de jogar futebol; gostam de viajar; gostam de cinema; não gostam da comida chinesa; não gostam de palavras cruzadas; não gostam de tempo frio; não gostam de transporte público.

5

Ele canta bossa nova; trabalha num clube no Guarujá. Ele é casado mas separado. Mora num apartamento perto da praia. Gosta de tocar violão; de arte. Não gosta de violência; de intolerância. Ele é bastante tímido mas gosta muito de se divertir.

6

1 In Planaltina in the outskirts of Brasília. 2 The mother is a telephonist; the father is a garage mechanic.

7

JORGE: Sou cantor. Sou casado. Moro em São Paulo numa casa.

Sou tímido. Gosto de ópera; não gosto de futebol.

CLARA: Sou cantora. Sou solteira. Moro em Manaus numa

casa. Sou preguiçosa. Gosto de andar; não gosto de

esporte.

8

médica; jornalista; padeira; gerente; pintora; carpinteira; jornalista

9

- 1 The one asking for cabeleireiras/os. Yes, the pay is good.
- 2 Initiative, dynamism and organization.
- 3 The one looking for a marketing manager.

10

1 Paulo's free days are Monday and Friday. 2 He is not available on Thursday. 3 False: he is not busy on Friday. 4 At the weekend he rests (Saturday) and visits friends (Sunday).

11

otimista — pessimista impaciente — calma inteligente — estúpido trabalhador — preguiçoso

12

- 1 São duas e quinze 2 São quinze para a uma 3 É uma hora
- 4 São cinco e vinte

13

- 1 ao meio dia e meia às (doze e trinta)
- 2 às cinco para as sete (24hr clock: às dezoito e cinquenta e cinco)
- 3 às oito e meia (24hr clock: às vinte e trinta)
- 4 seven

A janela está aberta; O carro é azul; A menina é inglesa; Ele está triste; Elas estão na cozinha; Curitiba é uma cidade no Brasil.

15

- 1 He describes himself as quite tall and dark.
- 2 He is a doctor and works in a hospital in the centre of the city (Rio).
- 3 False: he likes computers.

I'm a doctor and I live in a flat in Rio de Janeiro. I work in a hospital in the city centre. I'm quite tall and dark. I like computers. I don't like being ill.

How much can you remember?

1

- 1 Gosto de jazz; não gosto de política.
- 2 Trabalho numa companhia no Rio às quartas-feiras.
- 3 Ele é americano, bastante tímido, mas otimista.

2

1 wanted/required 2 intelligent 3 ugly 4 the newspaper 5 calm 6 the flat 7 a magazine 8 short 9 the beach

3

1 as casas 2 pessimistas 3 os cinemas 4 os pintores

1 a médica 2 a senhora 3 a cantora 4 a jornalista 5 solteira 6 tímida

5

É meio-dia e meia; São duas e quinze; São quinze e quarenta e cinco; São nove horas half past two, midnight, twenty past nine, one o'clock, ten past seven, three o'clock

Lesson 3

1

- 1 Miguel is 32/O Miguel tem 32 anos
- 2 How old is Maria?/Quantos anos tem a Maria?
- 3 When is your birthday?/Quando é o seu aniversário?
- 4 It's my birthday/É o dia do meu aniversário

2

- Nasci na Madeira; o meu aniversário é no dia seis de 1 ANA:
 - Maio: tenho treze anos.
- 2 ROBERT: Nasci na Irlanda; o meu aniversário é no dia quatorze
 - de Agosto; tenho vinte e quatro anos.
- Nasci na Espanha; o meu aniversário é no dia 3 Pedro:
 - primeiro de Março; tenho quarenta e dois anos.
- Nasci no Brasil: o meu aniversário é no dia vinte e 4 MARIA:

nove de Dezembro; tenho trinta e seis anos.

3

- My name is Antônio, and what's your name? Antônio: My name is Manuela. Where are you from? Manuela:
- I'm from Recife, and you? Antônio:
- I'm from Belém. I'm 19. How old are you? Manuela:

I'm 25. Antônio:

- 1 Five: herself, her parents, her brother and sister.
- 2 Brother: Zé. Sister: Cámi.
- 3 Her brother is 20, her sister is 16.
- 4 Cristina was born in Brazil; her brother and sister in Portugal.

5

CRISTINA: a minha bolsinha; a minha maquiagem; os meus óculos;

as minhas vitaminas.

Antônio: a minha carteira; a minha agenda; as minhas chaves;

os meus óculos de sol.

6

José: Hi, Teresa. Do you have a large or small family?

TERESA: I have a large family: three sons and a daughter. Vasco

is the eldest and Clara the youngest ... the ages vary

between 30 and 15 years of age.

José: Your husband is retired, isn't he? Do you still work?

TERESA: I'm a housewife. I always have lots to do!

7

1 o restaurante onde fui ontem. 2 Onde fui eu? 3 Eu passei o dia na praia. 4 Tomei banhos de sol.

8a

encontrei, encontraste, encontrou, encontramos, encontraram; escondi, escondeste, escondeu, escondemos, esconderam; decidi, decidiste, decidiu, decidimos, decidiram

8Ь

1 Foi o José 2 Foi o Pedrinho 3 Foi o Antônio 4 Foi a Dona Augusta

5 Foi a Rosa 6 Foi a Maria Lucinda 7 Foi a Teresa 8 Foi o Sr Silva

9 Foi a Susana 10 Foi o casal Sousa

9

Faz favor! Queria uma mesa para uma pessoa. Está ótima. Tem o cardápio por favor? Sim, por favor. Queria uma salada mista, uma moqueca de camarão e uma garrafa de vinho branco. A conta por favor.

10

1 chicken soup 2 The meat comes with rice; the fish comes with potatoes 3 lettuce and tomato 4 False: Dessert consists of fruit – oranges, apples or grapes.

How much can you remember?

- 1 Quantos anos tem? Quantos anos faz?
- 2 Quando é o seu aniversário?
- 3 Estou com pressa
- 4 Nasci em Londres
- 5 O meu irmão tem dezesseis anos; a sua namorada tem quinze anos
- 6 as suas chaves e a sua carteira
- 7 Queria uma mesa para dois e o cardápio se faz favor

2

1 morrendo 2 minha chama 3 tem 4 nasceu

3

1 os meus irmãos 2 o seu carro 3 os seus óculos de sol 4 a minha bolsinha 5 os seus livros 6 a sua caneta

5

sessenta e seis, setenta e três, cento e um, vinte e três, sete, oitenta e sete, dois mil, duzentos e sete, oito, noventa, quarenta e cinco, seiscentos e setenta e nove, dez, um/uma, trinta e seis

6

o jantar = dinner a ceia = supper o café da manhã = breakfast o almoco = lunch

7

I was born in London. I am 22. My birthday is on the 15th May. How old is Paulo? He is 40. His birthday is on the 1st of December.

8

1 His neighbour and friend, Sr Mendes 2 To sit down 3 A drink 4 Beer 5 Telephone his wife

Lesson 4

1

Faz favor! Desculpe! 2 Como? 3 Não sei 4 aqui (here), ali (there); cá (here), lá (there), aí (there) 5 de nada/não há de quê

2

1 dentro (da caixa) 2 em frente de 3 atrás de 4 em cima de 5 debaixo de 6 ao lado de

3

perto de, debaixo de, em frente de, fora de

4

1 Can you tell me where the Jardim América is? 2 The Directions are: go straight on. Stay on this side of the street. At the end of the square turn to the right and immediately on your left you will find a road going down to the Jardim América.

5

Α

- 1 Você siga sempre em frente. A sapataria fica em frente do Jardim da Luz
- 2 Você siga sempre em frente, atravesse a avenida Ipiranga, siga sempre em frente, e depois vire à esquerda
- 3 Você siga sempre em frente. Depois, vire à direita e o hospital é em frente da estação
- 4 Siga sempre em frente, vire à direita e atravesse a avenida São João. No fim desta avenida vire à esquerda e o supermercado fica ao fim da rua
- 5 Os correios são logo ali, à esquerda, na esquina

В

- 1 É ao lado do teatro
- 2 É atrás da delegacia de polícia
- 3 É em frente do banco

C

1 É perto do supermercado 2 É perto do cinema 3 É perto da tabacaria

D

 $1\ \acute{\mathbf{E}}$ ao lado do banco $2\ \acute{\mathbf{E}}$ ao lado da tabacaria $3\ \acute{\mathbf{E}}$ ao lado da mercearia

6

Vamos a Belo Horizonte e precisamos de um quarto com banheiro. Vamos ficar dois dias. Queríamos um hotel de cinco estrelas

7

Vou viajar de avião e vou ficar uma semana

8

passaporte; cheques de viagem; cartões de crédito; carteira; pasta; pasta; pasta

9

- 1 Ele perdeu o seu passaporte; ele perdeu os seus cheques de viagem; ele perdeu os seus cartões de crédito; ele perdeu a sua pasta
- 2 a sua carteira e a sua pasta
- 3 a sua pasta

10

- 1 Queria um quarto de casal com chuveiro, televisão e telefone para uma semana
- 2 Queria um quarto simples com banheira, chuveiro e telefone para quinze dias
- 3 Queria um quarto de casal com duas camas, rádio e televisão para duas noites.

- 1 Desculpe, mas não há toalhas/luz
- 2 Desculpe, mas não há telefone/papel higiênico
- 3 Desculpe, mas não há televisor

12

- 1 Desculpe, no meu quarto a persiana não funciona; a televisão está pifada
- 2 Desculpe, no meu quarto o telefone está quebrado; o rádio está quebrado; o chuveiro não funciona
- 3 Desculpe, no meu quarto o toalete não funciona; a luz não funciona

How much can you remember?

1

- 1 Queria reservar um quarto de casal com café da manhã incluído para seis noites
- 2 Dê-me o seu número de telefone. De nada
- 3 Perdi a minha carteira, as minhas chaves, o meu passaporte e os meus cartões de crédito
- 4 Reservaram um quarto de casal com duas camas com chuveiro

2

sem banheira = without bath um quarto de casal = a double room vire à direita = turn to the right no fim desta rua = at the end of this road

3

reservar: reservei to reserve atravessar: atravessei to cross seguir: segui to follow virar: virei to turn subir: subi to go up confirmar: confirmei to confirm

4

1 Vão atravessar a rua 2 Vou reservar um quarto 3 Ela vai virar à esquerda

5

1 Pode me dizer onde é o banco/os correios/a estação ferroviária/a biblioteca/a estação rodoviária?

6

faz favor! com licença!

7

debaixo de, atrás de, em cima de, junto de, longe de, ao lado de, perto de, à direita de, ao lado de

8

1 Is there a hotel near here? 2 Can you tell me where the theatre is? 3 Where is the mini-market? 4 Where is the post office?

9

felizmente = fortunately to find encontrar plane avião to reserve reservar that's unfortunate! que azar!

= a fortnight

quinze dias

10

uma cama, um rádio, um telefone, toalhas, um televisor

11

1 the Continental Hotel 2 cross this avenue, go down that road there opposite/in front, at the end of the road turn to your left and you will find the hotel very close by on your right; directions given by a policeman 3 the Hotel Marisol 4 whether the Marisol Hotel will be more expensive than the Continental

Lesson 5

1

saldos/liquidação sale; preços baixos low prices; caixa cash desk; aberto open; saída exit; entrada livre come in and browse; fechado closed; ICM incluído VAT included

2

Um par de alparcatas pretas, por favor

O meu número é trinta e sete

Sim, por favor. Estas estão um pouco grandes. Tem um tamanho abaixo?

Obrigado/a. Gosto destas ... Fico com elas. Quanto custam? Posso pagar com cheque?

3

- 2 Este trem é mais rápido do que este
- 3 Este livro é mais interessante do que este
- 4 Estes sapatos são mais modernos do que estes

4

- 1 Estes sapatos são mais caros do que estes
- 2 Ela é tão alta como o seu pai
- 3 O trem é mais rápido do que o ônibus
- 4 Ele é tão inteligente como o seu irmão

5

pouco – muito; mais – menos; grande – pequeno; maior – menor; ótimo – péssimo

Я

- 1 Pode me mostrar uma blusa de malha verde?
- 2 Queria uma camiseta de algodão

- 3 Posso ver um par de sapatos pretos?
- 4 Oueria uma blusa verde clara
- 5 Pode me mostrar uma gravata cinzenta de seda?

9

- a farmácia, a lanchonete, uma livraria, a papelaria,
- o cabeleireiro, a lavanderia automática, os correios

10

1 a shirt 2 red 3 size (40) 4 Where is the fitting room? Can I pay by cheque? The price is very good

I'd like to buy a shirt please. Do you have other colours? I prefer the red one. My size is 40. Where is the fitting room? The price is very good. Can I pay by cheque?

11

baker's – a padaria tobacconist's – a tabacaria minimarket – o minimercado butcher's – o açougue fish shop – a peixaria grocer's – a mercearia

12

- a tabacaria os cigarros
- a farmácia os remédios
- a frutaria a fruta
- a livraria os livros
- o correio os selos
- a padaria o pão
- a loja de móveis usados os móveis de segunda mão

13

- 2 um pacote de manteiga e um pacote de café
- 3 meio litro de vinho
- 4 pode me dar duzentos gramas de queijo
- 5 três quilos e meio de batatas

- 6 queria dois quilos de cebolas
- 7 um tubo de pasta de dentes/queria sabão
- 8 Dê-me quatro quilos de açúcar

How much can you remember?

1

- 1 Posso pagar com cartão de crédito?
- 2 Qual é o seu tamanho? 3 Ficam-lhe bem: fica-me bem
- 4 Preciso de um tamanho acima 5 Fico com eles/elas
- 6 Posso experimentar? É mesmo uma pechincha

2

1 este 2 aquelas 3 este 4 estas 5 isto

3

1 tão 2 mais 3 menos 4 o melhor

4

1 a dress 2 it was too big 3 buy a pair of high-heeled shoes and a handbag

Lesson 6

2

o duty-free, o cartão de embarque, o horário de partidas, nãofumantes, o controle de passaportes, a sala de espera, o portão de embarque

3

2 Ele irá ao check-in 3 Ele irá ao controle de passaportes 4 Ele visitará o duty-free

4a

Excuse; loudspeaker; flight; time; flight; arrive

4b

apertar; cintos de segurança refrescos; bebidas alcoólicas comprar; cigarros; loção após-barba

5

Qual é a sua nacionalidade? Mostre-me o seu passaporte Quanto tempo vai ficar?

6

- 1 The writer is going to travel to Canada to visit his/her parents
- 2 Half past nine; over five hours
- 3 Go to the check-in desk and passport control
- 4 False: the writer hates flying

I'm going to travel to Canada to visit my parents. The flight will leave London at half past nine and will last more than five hours. Before boarding the plane, I have to go to the check-in desk and to passport control. I must admit that I don't like flying at all but, in this case, I have to!

7

terá ido; terá reclamado; terá passado; terá dito; terá apanhado

8

proibido estacionar no waiting; ocupado engaged; empurrar push; cancelado cancelled

9

Quando é o próximo trem para Santos? Quanto custa uma ida e volta? Queria uma tabela de horário por favor. Queríamos três passagens de ida para Bauru. De que plataforma parte o trem?

- 1 toilets
- 2 Estação Leopoldina
- 3 (a) restaurant; (b) petrol/gas station
- 4 bus, aeroplane, underground and train

1 I go by car 2 I go by underground 3 I go by bus 4 I go on foot 5 I go by taxi 6 I go by tram

12

1 Yes (Monza); 870,00 reais 2 Accident insurance 3 24 years 4 driving licence; identity card; credit card 5 No

13

semáforos traffic lights; dê prioridade give way; obras roadworks; sentido único one-way street; desvio diversion; rodovia motorway; pedestres pedestrians; limite de velocidade speed limit

14

- 1 Ten reais of diesel please!
- 2 I'd like ten litres of four-star petrol
- 3 Please check the oil
- 4 Can you check the tyre pressures?
- 5 I need more water in the radiator
- 6 Can you fill it up please!

15

1 Faz favor de verificar o óleo e também a pressão dos pneus. Preciso de mais água no radiador e quinze reais de gasolina. Penso que tenho um furo num pneu. How much can you remember?

1

- 1 Doze reais de gasolina comum, por favor
- 2 Onde é o controle de passaportes?
- 3 Que vôo anunciam?
- 4 Quando é o próximo trem para ...?
- 5 Não tenho nada a declarar

2

- 1 comido, dado, sido, visitado, esperado, verificado
- 2 feito, escrito, visto, posto, dito

3

engaged, roadworks, push, no waiting, pedestrians, diversion, give way

4

1 Uma ida por favor 2 Sou espanhol/a 3 Dez litros por favor

5

- 1 False: a hora de chegada = the arrival time
- 2 False: um atraso = a delay
- 3 False: a sala de espera = the departure lounge
- 4 False: a aeromoça = the air hostess
- 5 False: o cinto de segurança = the safety belt
- 6 False: um lugar de não-fumantes = a no-smoking seat

Lesson 7

1

1 7.00 a.m. 2 In the bathroom 3 In his bedroom 4 In the kitchen 5 He leaves home 6 He jogs 7 2. lava-se no banheiro; 3 Veste-se no seu quarto; 4 Senta-se na cozinha; 5 Sai de casa; 6 Faz jogging

levanto-me às ... horas: lavo-me no banheiro às ... horas. Vistome no meu quarto. Tomo o café da manhã às ... horas. Saio de casa e vou ...

3

invejosamente jealously, serenamente, serenely, evidentemente obviously, triunfantemente triumphantly

A REVISTA: A que horas se levantou? Levantei-me às sete horas. JORGE:

A REVISTA: Onde se lavou?

JORGE:

Lavei-me no banheiro. A REVISTA: Onde se vestiu?

Vesti-me no meu quarto. JORGE:

A REVISTA: Onde se sentou para tomar o café da manhã?

Sentei-me na cozinha, claro! JORGE: A REVISTA: A que horas saiu de casa? Saí de casa às oito horas. JORGE:

A REVISTA: E depois?

Fiz jogging por meia hora JORGE:

5

Present indicative Preterite tense queixamo-nos queixamo-nos queixam-se queixaram-se queixas-te queixaste-te queixa-se queixou-se

queixo-me

queixei-me

1 se levantou 2 sentamo-nos 3 se deitaram 4 se esqueceu

7a

1 walk 2 run 3 lift 4 push 5 pull

7b

- 1 To put the ball in the opponents' net as many times as possible
- 2 Two teams; on a rectangular piece of ground

Football is a ball sport in which two teams play on a rectangular piece of ground. The object of the game is to put the ball into the opponents' net as many times as possible (to score goals).

8

1 nós líamos we were reading

she was going to the theatre 2 ela ja ao teatro you were driving slowly

3 você dirigia lentamente

I was studying 4 eu estudava

they had (were having) lots of 5 elas tinham muitos problems problemas

9

1 (ele) pintava ... 2 (ele) bebia ... 3 (ele) fazia a barba ...

10

daríamos, seríamos, estaríamos, veríamos, viríamos, teríamos, faríamos

11

- 2 estou com dor de dentes
- 3 dói-me a garganta
- 4 dói-me o braço
- 5 estou com dores no estômago
- 6 doem-me as costas (as costas means 'back' (pl), so the verb doer is in the plural)
- 7 quebrei o joelho

12

2 Arraniei-o 3 Vendi-a 4 Você as tinha

1 Dei-lhe um relógio 2 Não lhe disse as notícias 3 Comprou-lhe os bolos 4 Explicou-nos o problema

How much can you remember?

levantar-se, vestir-se, lavar-se, sentar-se

2

- 1 levantei-me às ... horas
- 2 deitei-me às ... horas
- 3 lavo-me no banheiro

3

Usually I get up at 8 a.m., wash and dress. I eat breakfast in the kitchen. I leave home at 8.45 a.m. I go to my job in the city centre.

4

- 1 A que horas saiu de casa?
- 2 Onde se sentou para tomar o café da manhã?
- 3 Onde se vestin?

5

to get angry, to remember, to be mistaken, to complain, to cut oneself, to sit down, to wash

respirávamos, comia, partia, andavam

Imperfect tense of ter: tinha, tinhas, tinha, tínhamos, tinham Conditional tense of ter: teria, terias, teria, teríamos, teriam Conditional tense of fazer: faria, farias, faria, fariamos, fariam 8

estou resfriado/a; tenho dor de cabeça; sinto-me tonto/a; estou com dor de ouvido

falo-lhe

I speak to her (or to him/to you)

falei-te

I spoke to you falaram-me they spoke to me

falou-nos

he (or she/you) spoke to us

fala-lhes

he (or she/you) speaks to them

10

1 7.30 a.m.

2 he has to go to work and his office is very far away

Lesson 8

- 1 Queria fazer uma chamada para Londres. Posso ver a lista telefônica? Qual é o código da Inglaterra e o código de Londres?
- 2 Dez selos para os Estados Unidos, por favor.
- 3 Tem algumas cartas dirigidas a (name), por favor?

2

1 viajado 2 mandado 3 comprado 4 visto 5 estado 6 treinado

3

Coloque a ficha - insert token Retire o fone do gancho - lift receiver Aguarde o sinal de discar - wait for the dialling tone Disque o número - dial number

1 tinha 2 tinha 3 tinha

Crossword

Horizontal Vertical

1 Alagoas 2 Lista

5 Escolas 4 Acabada

6 Saia 6 Sol

8 Ar 7 Amo

9 Somar

5

Bom dia, posso trocar estes cheques de viagem, se faz favor? Estou na Pensão Bonita, na Rua Timbiras. Qual é o câmbio?

6

- 1 It is vibrant and dynamic
- 2 It is a country full of large forests and natural resources
- 3 The mixture of different races. This produces a varied and exuberant culture and folklore

7*a*

Bom dia, queria abrir um depósito em conta corrente com um talão de cheques, um cartão magnético para a caixa automática e um extrato de conta mensal.

7b

- 1 Do you have a character reference?
- 2 Do you want a deposit account?
- 3 Do you want a cash-point card?
- 4 Do you have a specimen signature?

8

After inserting the card and keying in your personal code, select the desired option by pressing the requisite keys. Take your card. Take your money.

9

Your secret pin number is personal and non-transferable: memorize it; keep it in a safe place separate from the card; do not reveal it to anyone; if your card is lost or stolen contact your bank immediately; do not give it to anyone.

10

1 as televisões 2 os aviões 3 as ligações 4 amáveis 5 portunhóis 6 radicais

How much can you remember?

1

- 1 Queria seis selos para Irlanda
- 2 Queria fazer uma chamada. Tem a lista telefônica?
- 3 Qual é o código para o Canadá? Qual é o código para Vancouver? Oue cabine telefônica?
- 4 Não tenho estudado muito
- 5 o fone; o número; o sinal de discar/ligar; ser cortado; estar ocupado

2

- 1 She had left when the postman arrived
- 2 We had put the cups in the kitchen
- 3 I had bought a sandwich to take away
- 4 Can I change a traveller's cheque?
- 5 What is the rate?
- 6 A cash-point card

3

as ligações, os irmãos, os pães, azuis, os hotéis

a organização; a mão, o cão, difícil

5

This morning I went to the telephone company office to make a call. The clerk there told me that I had to wait a bit because there was a queue. Whilst I was waiting, I looked for the international code for Portugal and also the area code for Lisbon. I dialled the number. It was engaged. I dialled the number again ... Ah! This time it was ringing ... I said 'Hello?' But nobody replied! I was cut off!

Lesson 9

1

Queria quatro platéias, no meio da sala 2 Queria um camarote para o próximo sábado. Está esgotada! 3 Seis ingressos de arquibancada descoberta para hoje, por favor. Tem um programa?

2a

Paulo: Acho que o filme é chato. A história não presta para

nada e a atuação é uma droga.

Isabel: Não concordo contigo. A história não é horrível, é

genial! Também acho que a atuação está bem. Na

verdade, o filme é ótimo!

Paulo: Sem essa! É tão chato que me vou embora!

2b

1 **Carnaval** poster. Four days. The final of the masked competition; a car; 2 From Thursday to Sunday; Teatro João Caetano; Yes, on Thursdays and Fridays at 12.30 p.m.

3

um filme de suspensea thrillerum filme de amor/romancea love storyum filme de terrora horror story

um filme de ficção científica a science fiction film

um musical a musical um desenho animado a cartoon

5

1 Entrevistador: What do you do on Sunday morning?

Transeunte 1: I stay in bed till midday. Afterwards, I watch

TV.

ENTREVISTADOR: And on Sunday afternoon?

TRANSEUNTE 1: I watch more TV or listen to music. Some-

times I phone my friend for a chat.

2 Entrevistador: What do you do on Saturday morning?

TRANSEUNTE 2: I go and visit my parents. Later, I go to the

supermarket.

Entrevistador: And on Saturday afternoon? Transeurte 2: I go out with some friends.

6a

1 to go fishing 2 to wash the car 3 to go sailing 4 to read the papers

6b

1 gymnastics/aerobics 2 golf 3 karate 4 dancing 5 skating 6 surfing

7

No sábado de manhã vou visitar uns amigos. No sábado à tarde jogo golfe e no sábado à noite vejo televisão. No domingo de manhã fico deitado/a na cama até o meio-dia e depois lavo o carro.

8

escreva, escrevas, escreva, escrevamos, escrevam transfira, transfiras, transfira, transfiramos, transfiram controle, controles, controle, controlemos, controlem

9

1 Faz bom tempo; faz sol 2 Faz mau tempo; está chovendo 3 Faz mau tempo; faz vento 4 Faz mau tempo; está nublado

1 In a remote village in the south of Brazil 2 To predict the weather 3 From TV and the newspaper

11

1 Rio de Janeiro e Vitória 2 Teresina e Brasília 3 Manaus e Belém 4 o trovão; a neblina; nublado; a temperatura

12

- A: 1 A fortnight in Portugal 2 No, its a deluxe hotel 3 Beach; golf; water-skiing
- B: 1 100 places for tents or trailers/caravans 2 laundrette lavanderia automática; shop loja; swimming pool piscina

13

hot showers, dishwashing facilities, clothes washing facilities, post office, lots of shade, pool

14

1 Isabel thinks it's a very long journey by car. 2 Fernanda thinks a walking holiday would be too tiring. 3 Isabel suggests a boarding house, an inn or to go camping; she doesn't agree with Fernanda about the *pousada* suggestion because it's too expensive.

How much can you remember?

1

False: **a peça** = play
False: **o cartaz** = poster

False: a próxima sessão = the next show

2

um bolinho; um cãozinho; um pratinho; estou farto/a!; é uma droga!; concordo completamente contigo

3

a prize, a competition, Sunday morning, ticket office, a première, Christmas, it's sunny

4

um desenho animado, um filme de terror, um filme de suspense, o karatê, o judô, a patinação, vejo televisão, saio com amigos

5

False: ir pescar = to fish

False: **lavar o carro** = to wash the car False: **ler os jornais** = to read the papers

6

é ótimo!; é genial!; é legal!

7

1 Por que não vai a Bahia? 2 Seria uma viagem muito longa 3 (Ela) não gostaria de voar 4 (Ele) ficaria numa pousada 5 É menos caro fazer camping

8

1 No, s/he stays in bed until mid-day 2 On Saturday morning after visiting his/her parents 3 False 4 Watches TV

On Saturday morning I like to visit my parents. Afterwards, I go to the supermarket. On Sunday morning I stay in bed until midday. On Sunday afternoon I watch TV.

Lesson 10

1

Rui: figure 3 2 Isabel: figure 1 3 Paulo: figure 2

- 1 Falsa: a maioria vive em apartamentos
- 2 Seis: dois quartos de dormir; sala de visitas; sala de jantar; cozinha e banheiro

3

shops lojas; farms sítios; warehouses armazéns; garages garagens; buildings prédios; houses moradias; for sale (or sales) vendas (vende-se for sale); flats apartamentos; wanted compras; floors andares; offices escritórios; plots of land terrenos

4

- 1 A snack bar; the one advertising lanchonete
- 2 A beautiful mansion with 4 suites, 6 public rooms, gardens, swimming pool, barbecue, 800 square metres of land, in an exceptional location
- 3 The one for **Itapecerica**; it is a **sítio** (a small farm); it has a football pitch; it has its own springs and lakes
- 4 The one for Rua Augusta which is in the Centro (city centre)
- 5 The one in Cabo Frio
- 6 The one for **Búzios**

5

uma televisão a cores, uma lareira, poltronas, parede, sofá, mesa baixa, abajur, quadro, mesinha

6

a tomada, inundado/a, o encanador, um fusível, um cano furado, a geladeira, a máquina de lavar roupa, a bomba, lâmpadas, ligar a televisão, não está ligado à corrente, as ligações, o encaixe

7

A geladeira está quebrada. Tenho um cano furado. Preciso de um encanador. A televisão não está ligada à corrente. Preciso de três lâmpadas. Tem um fusível?

8

1 cooker 2 washing machine 3 fridge 4 dishwasher 5 kettle 6 tumble drier 7 toaster 8 iron 9 mixer 10 vacuum cleaner 11 microwaye

9

1 Chemists (p 42), transport (p 43), classified advertisements (p 46) 2 **esporte** sport (p 24) 3 **tempo** weather (p 35), **cinemas** cinemas (p 73) 4 **Negócios**

10

1 (b); 2 (c); 3 (a)

How much can you remember?

1

O meu apartamento tem dois quartos de dormir, uma pequena cozinha, uma sala de estar e um banheiro. Não tenho jardim mas tenho garagem, porteiro eletrônico, vidros duplos e antena parabólica.

2

- 1 Não é bem assim
- 2 O apartamento tem vista para o mar
- 3 Acabamos de mudar de casa
- 4 Vende-se (vendas) 5 Procura-se/Compras

3

Imperfect subjunctive of terminar: terminasse, terminasses, terminasses, terminassem

4

- 1 If I were to leave tomorrow, I would get home earlier
- 2 If he were to buy the car, it would cost a lot of money
- 3 If we were to travel all day, we would be (become) very tired

uma sala de jantar, um quarto de dormir, uma cozinha, um banheiro

6

sei lá ...; pois bem; portanto

Lesson 11

7

1 Not really. She has a motorbike whereas he has a bicycle; her hobby is hang gliding whereas his is stamp collecting

- 2 Probably not
- 3 Eric and Maria
- 4 Not very much!

3

- 1 Ouer fazer turismo
- 2 Tem de escrever um artigo para o seu jornal
- 3 Maria convida a Sarah a assistir a um curso de saltar de paraquedismo
- 4 Sarah recusa ela não se interessa por esportes

4

- в Infelizmente, não posso.
- в O que está passando?
- в Gostaria muito de ir/parece-me um boa idéia/por que não?

5

Tudo bem? Is everything OK?; Como vai? How are you?; Como se chama? What's your name?; De onde é? Where are you from?; O que faz? What do you do?; Está em férias? Are you on holiday?; O tempo está muito bom/ruim The weather is very good/bad; Chamo-me My name is

6

1 Q: Bom dia, como se chama? A: Chamo-me . . .
2 Q: De onde é? A: Sou de . . .
3 Q: Quer café? A: Por que não?

4 Q: Bom dia, como vai? A: Bom dia, vou bem

obrigado

5 Q: O que faz? A: Sou professor

6 Q: Quer comer? A: Quero, sim, obrigada

7

Last year I spent a great holiday on the beach. The weather was very good and I stayed in a boarding house which was very near the beach. I really liked the sea and all the people I met. I hope to go back there one day.

8

- 1 No ano passado passei férias maravilhosas nas montanhas. O tempo estava muito ruim e eu fiquei numa pousada da juventude
- 2 No ano passado passei férias maravilhosas na cidade de Paris. O tempo estava bom e eu fiquei num hotel
- 3 No ano passado passei férias maravilhosas nos lagos. O tempo estava ótimo e eu figuei numa pousada

9

deplorable	deplorável
variable	variável
solution	solução
petition	petição
lamentável	lamentable
incomparável	incomparable
perfeição	perfection
confortável	comfortable

incessante incessant; impulsivo impulsive; impossível impossible; impulso impulse; impreciso imprecise; imperceptível imperceptible; imparcial impartial; impetuoso impetuous

11

- 1 By train and then bus
- 2 He caught a taxi
- 3 He plans to go to Recife at the end of the summer

How much can you remember?

7

a minha bebida preferida, o meu passatempo predileto/favorito, o advogado, a bibliotecária, a profissão

2

falar, falares, falar, falarmos, falarem

3

Refusing: não posso, já fiz outros planos; acho que não é possível; infelizmente, não posso

Accepting: gostaria muito; está bom; parece-me uma boa idéia

4

Chamo-me ... Como se chama? De onde é?

6

an invitation, I don't drive, the conference, hardworking, calm, efficient, to attend/go to

7

No ano passado visitei a Bélgica. O tempo estava ótimo. Fiquei num hotel perto da praia. Foi muito confortável. Gostaria de ir a Cuba este ano. Há dois anos fui à Grécia.

Lesson 12

1

JANE: Alô? Posso falar com o gerente?

A Companhia: Desculpe, mas ele ainda não chegou. É urgente?

Jane: Desculpe, pode falar mais devagar? Não falo

português muito bem.

A COMPANHIA: Ah! Não desligue. O gerente já chegou.

2

Sr Coelho: Alô? Secretária: Alô.

SR COELHO: Aqui fala o Sr Coelho. Posso falar com o Sr Costa?

É muito urgente.

Secretária: Desculpe, mas o Sr Costa está no Rio em negócios.

SR COELHO: Rio! Que azar! Eu estou falando do Rio! Secretária: Oual é o nome da sua companhia?

SR COELHO: Coelho & Irmão.

Secretária: Não entendo. Está marcada na agenda uma

reunião para hoje no Rio entre o Senhor Costa e

Coelho & Irmão.

(a moment later ...)

SR COELHO: Ah! Só um minuto. O Sr Costa já chegou!

3

a máquina de xerox; a máquina de escrever; o computador/o teclado; o telefone; o disquete; o fax

4

querida; recebi; ontem; pequena; que; amiga

5

Missing words: letter; arrange; to discuss; products; apologise; delay; arrange/set; month; confirmation; date; pleasure; city

Questions:

1 False: sent on 4th July

- 2 False: Brito & Co. want to arrange the meeting with Costa & Co. to purchase Costa's products
- 3 The delay in answering
- 4 Send a fax

6

1 Metal utensils 2 Yes 3 A catalogue 4 Cutlery sets. They are of the finest quality 5 Price lists

7 The Portuguese language

The Portuguese language is spoken not only in Brazil, but also in Portugal (in Europe), in Guinea-Bissau, Angola, Mozambique and in the Cape Verde islands and São Tomé and Principe (in Africa), Goa, Damão and Diu (in India), Macau (in China) and Timor.

Portuguese is spoken more than French. The Portuguese language is the fifth most spoken language in the world. About 180 million people speak Portuguese.

Questions: 1 False 2 No 3 180 million 4 False

Lesson 13

7

1 digitar a minha senha 2 entrar na Net 3 vou ao site do meu banco 4 vou checar o meu email 5 um cartão virtual 6 visitar um site de turismo

Firstly, I am going to key in my password to access the Net. Next I will visit my bank site to check my balance. After that, I will check my mail. Ah! There are no messages. I am going to send a virtual card to my sister whose birthday it is today. Finally, I'm going to visit a tourism information site and book a hotel in Salvador.

2

1 Em primeiro lugar digitei a minha senha

2 Depois fui ao site do meu banco para conferir o meu saldo

3 Depois disso, eu chequei o meu email

4 Enviei um cartão virtual para a minha irmã

5 Finalmente, visitei um site de turismo

3

1 4 million

2 usuários

3 it is cheaper

4 False: After 10pm the Internet is slower.

4

a sala de chat chat room scanner scanner

a Tecnologia de Informação

Information Technology

o banco online

online banking browser

o browser o hacker

hacker

o provedor da Internet

Internet Provider to surf the Net

navegar na Net o shopping online

online shopping the Internet

a Internet/Net (also: a rede)
o modem

modem

buscar o engenho de busca to search search engine

o programa

program

5

Dear Ester

Please could you set up a video conference for Thursday, 6 September, between the Lisbon and Rio offices, in order to discuss next year's sales strategy?

By the way, thank you for the Web page you built for the Rio office – it looks much better! Now it is so easy to access and download information and the graphics are excellent!

As requested, I attach the list of our DVD suppliers in South America.

All the best, Juliana Ramos Sales Executive

6

- 1 Ele encomendou 5 livros online
- 2 Ela compra todos os seus CDs na Internet
- 3 Eles fornecem os detalhes dos seus cartões de crédito
- 4 Você (o/a senhor/a) reservou um vôo para Salvador online.

7

- a) www.radiobandeirantes.com.br b) www.passeio.com.br
- c) www.submarino.com.br

8

1

to key in your password to send a message to send an attachment to check your e-mail I don't have any mail my email address

2 Last year Alberto sent a virtual Christmas card by e-mail to all his work colleagues

9

- 1 He picks up the mobile and consults his client database for the name of the person with whom he has the next interview
- 2 He consults his electronic organiser and confirms that he has a lunch with an important client that Friday coming
- 3 He rings the Churrascaria Brasil to reserve a table for Friday at 2pm.

1

- 1 Faz favor! Queria uma cerveja, um cafezinho, um bolo e um sanduíche de queijo.
- 2 Faz favor, que horas são? Chamo-me ..., sou de (país), sou (profissão). De onde é? Gosto do Rio; não gosto do Brasil.

2

- 1 Bom dia, queria um quarto para três noites com chuveiro; chamo-me...; tenho (vinte e cinco) anos; o dia 1º de Abril; sou de...
- 2 Faz favor, para o centro da cidade? Pode falar mais devagar?
- 3 Faz favor! Queria uma mesa para duas pessoas. Queria sopa, frango com salada e uma garrafa de vinho branco. A conta, por favor

3

- 1 Posso ver algumas blusas de malha? O meu tamanho é quarenta. Prefiro a azul, quanto é/custa? Posso experimentar?
- 2 Para o Museu Nacional, por favor
- 3 Queria um pequeno carro para uma semana; pode encher, por favor

4

- 1 Faz favor, estou com dor de dentes, tem alguma coisa para a dor?
- 2 Queria dezesseis selos para os Estados Unidos, por favor. Posso trocar uns cheques de viagem? Qual é o câmbio?

5

- 1 Duas platéias, por favor; a que horas vai começar a peça?
- 2 Dois ingressos, por favor; duas cervejas, por favor
- 3 No ano passado fui a Itália. Este ano pretendo ir a ...
- 4 A televisão no meu quarto não funciona e não há toalhas

Portuguese–English glossary

Brazilian (Br) words are distinguished from Portuguese (Pt) words where necessary.

a	at, to, it, the (f), you (f), her	adiantado adoecer	fast, early (time) to become ill
à (contraction	at the, to the	adorar	to adore, to love
of $a + a$)	,	advogado (m)	lawyer, solicitor
abaixo (de)	down, below,	aeromoça (f)	(Br) air hostess
	under	aeroporto (m)	airport
aberto	open	afastar	to remove,
abraçar	to hug, embrace		to keep away
abrir	to open	aficionado (m)	fan, enthusiast
acabar (de)	to finish	afinal	at last, finally
	(to have just)	agarrar	to seize, grasp
acampar	to camp	agência (f)	agency
aceitar	to accept	agência de	(Br) post office
acenar	to wave (hand),	correio	
	to nod (head)	agenda (f)	diary
acender	to light, to switch	agir	to act, to behave
	on	agora	now
achar	to find, to dis-	agradável	pleasant
	cover, to think	agradecer	to thank, to be
acima	above		grateful for
acontecer	to happen	água (f)	water
acordo (m)	agreement	aguardar	to await
açougue (m)	(Br) butcher's	aguardente (f)	brandy
	(shop)	aí	there
acreditar	to believe	AIDS (f)	(Br) AIDS
adeus	goodbye	ainda	still, yet, even
adiamento (m)	postponement,	ajuda (f)	help
	advance	ajudar	to help

albergaria (f)	inn	após	after
alcançar	to reach	aprender	to learn
alegre	cheerful	apresentar	to introduce
além	over there, beyond	aquele/a	that, that one
além disso	moreover	agui	here
alface (f)	lettuce	ar (m)	air
alfândega (f)	customs	árbitro (m)	referee
algo	something	arena (f)	ring, arena
algodão (m)	cotton	artista (m/f)	artist
alguém	someone, some-	árvore (m)	tree
	body	ascensor (m)	lift, elevator
algum/a	some, any	assim	thus, like this
alguma coisa	something	assinar	to sign
alho (m)	garlic	assunto (m)	subject, matter
ali	there	attach;	attachment
aliás	besides, otherwise	attachment	(in e-mail)
almoçar	to lunch	(m)	
almoço (m)	lunch	até	up to, as far as,
alto	tall		until
altura (f)	height	até logo	so long
alugar	to rent, to hire	aterragem (f)	(Pt) landing
amanhã	tomorrow		(aeroplane)
amar	to love	aterrissagem (f)	(Br) landing
amável	kind		(aeroplane)
ambiente (m)	atmosphere	atirar	to throw, shoot
ambos	both	atrás	behind
amigo/a (m/f)	friend	atrasado	late
amor (m)	to love	atravessar	to cross
andar	to go, to walk	autocarro (m)	(Pt) bus
andar (m)	floor	auto-estrada (f)	(Pt) motorway
angolano	Angolan	automóvel (m)	car
aniversário (m)	anniversary	avariado	out of order,
ano (m)	year		broken
antena (f)	aerial	avião (m)	aeroplane
antes	before, rather		
anúncio (m)	advertisement	bacalhau (m)	dried, salted cod
ao (a + o)	to the, at the	bagagem (f)	luggage, baggage
apagar	to put out,	bagunça (f)	(Br) mess
	to extinguish	bairro (m)	district, suburb
apanhar	to catch	baixo	low, short
apartamento	flat, apartment	balcão (m)	balcony, circle
(m)			(theatre)

baliza (f)	net, goal	brincar	to have fun,
bancada (f)	row of seats		to play a joke
	(outdoors)	brinquedo (m)	toy
banco (m)	bank	buraco (m)	hole
banho (m)	bath	burro (m)	donkey
barato	cheap	buscar	to go for, to fetch
barba (f)	beard	buzina (f)	horn
barco (m)	boat		
barulho (m)	noise	cá	here
bastante	enough, quite	cabeça (f)	head
bate-papo (m)	(Br) chat	cabeleireiro/a	hairdresser
bater papo	(Br) to chat	cabelo (m)	hair
bêbedo	drunk	cachaça (f)	(Br) rum
beber	to drink	cachorro (m)	(Pt) puppy;
bebida (f)	drink		(Br) dog
beira-mar (f)	seaside	cada	each
bem	well, quite, good	cada um/a	each one
bem vindo	welcome	cadeira (f)	chair
bens (mpl)	goods, belongings	café (m)	coffee, café
biblioteca (f)	library	café da manhã	(Br) breakfast
bica (f)	(Pt) strong black	cair	to fall down
	coffee	caixa	cash point
bicha (f)	(Pt) queue	automática	
bilhete (m)	ticket	caixa de correio	letterbox
biscoito (m)	biscuit	calar	to keep quiet
blusa (f)	blouse	calçar	to put on
boa (adj f)	good		(shoes, gloves)
bocadinho (m)	a little bit, a little	calças (fpl)	trousers
	while	caldeirada (f)	(Pt) fish stew
bola (f)	ball	caldo verde (m)	(Pt) cabbage soup
bolacha (f)	biscuit	calor (m)	warmth, heat
bolo (m)	cake	cama (f)	bed
bolsa (f)	(Br) handbag;	camarote (m)	cabin (ship), box
	(Pt) purse,		(theatre)
	pouch	câmbio (m)	foreign exchange
bolso (m)	pocket	caminho (m)	path, way
bom/boa	good, nice, kind	caminho de	(Pt) railway
bonde (m)	(Br) tram	ferro (m)	
borracha (f)	rubber	camioneta (f)	coach
braço (m)	arm	camisa (f)	shirt
brasileiro/a	Brazilian	camisola (f)	(Pt) sweater
breve	short, brief, light	campismo (m)	(Pt) camping

campo (m)	field	chave (f)	key
canal (m)	channel (TV)	chávena (f)	(Pt) cup
caneta (f)	pen	chegar	to arrive, to be
cansado	tired		enough
cansar-se de	to tire of	cheio	full
cantar	to sing	cheirar	to smell
cão (m)	dog	choroso	tearful
cara (f)	face	chouriço (m)	(Pt) spicy smoked
cardápio (m)	menu		sausage
carne (f)	meat	chover	to rain
caro	dear, expensive	chumbo (m)	lead
carro (m)	car	(sem)	(unleaded)
carta (f)	letter	chutar	to kick
cartão (m)	card, cardboard	chuva (f)	rain
cartaz (m)	poster	chuveiro (m)	shower
carteira (f)	wallet	cidade (f)	city
carteiro (m)	postman	cinema (m)	cinema
casa (f)	home, house	claro	bright, clear
casado	married	claro!	right!, of course!
casal (m)	couple	cobrir	to cover,
casamento (m)	marriage, wedding		to conceal
cedo	soon, early	código (m)	code, postal/
celular (m)	mobile phone		telephone code
cem	hundred	coisa (f)	thing
cento (m)	hundred	coitado!	how unfortunate!
(e um)	(and one)	com	with
cerca (de)	around	comboio (m)	(Pt) train
certeza (f)	certainty	começar	to begin
com certeza	certainly	comer	to eat
certo	certain	comida (f)	food
cerveja (f)	beer	comigo	with me
chá (m)	tea	como	as, like
chaleira (f)	kettle	como?	what?
chamada (f)	call	comprar	to buy
chamar	to call,	compras (fpl)	shopping
	(of telephone)	compreender	to understand
	to ring	comprido	long
chamar-se	to be called	computador (m) computer
chão (m)	ground	concluir	to conclude,
charutaria (f)	tobacconist's		to end
	(shop)	concurso (m)	competition
chatice (f)	nuisance	conduzir	to drive

conhecer	to know	demasiado	too much
	(someone/place)	demora (f)	delay
consertar	to repair	dente (m)	tooth
constipação (f)	(Pt) cold	dentista (m/f)	dentist
consultório (m)	surgery	dentro (de)	inside
conta (f)	bill	depois (de)	afterwards, next
correio (m)	post office, mail	depósito (m)	deposit, petrol
correr	to run		tank (in car)
corrida (f)	race, bullfight	descansar	to rest
cotação (f)	rate	descer	to go, to come
couro (m)	leather		down
cozinha (f)	kitchen	desculpa (f)	excuse, apology
cozinhar	to cook	desculpe!	excuse me!
criança (f)	child	desde	since, from
cuidado (m)	care; worry	desejar	to want, to wish,
cuidado!	look out!		to desire
cuidar de	to take care of,	desenho	cartoon
	to look after	animado (m)	
cujo/a	whose, of which	desligar	to hang up
cumprimentar	to greet		(telephone)
cumprir	to fulfil, to carry	despedida (f)	farewell
	out	despesa (f)	expense
curto	brief, short	deste	of this, from this
custar	to cost	(de + este)	
custo (m)	price, cost	desvio (m)	diversion
		detestar	to hate
da (de + a)	of, from the	detrás	behind
dar	to give	devagar	slowly
dantes	before, formerly	dia (m)	day
data (f)	date	diante de	in front of
de	of, from	difícil	difficult
debaixo (de)	below, under-	dinheiro (m)	money
	neath	direita:	on the right of,
decerto	certainly	à direita de	to the right of
decidir	to decide	direito	right-hand,
declarar	to declare		straight
decolagem (f)	take off	disco rígido (m)	hard disc
dedo (m)	finger	disquete (m)	floppy disk
deitar	to lie down	divertir-se	to enjoy oneself
deitar-se	to go to bed	dizer	to say, to tell
deixar	to leave,	do (de + o)	from the, of the
	to abandon	doença (f)	illness

doer	to hurt, to ache	encerrar	to lock up
dona (f)	owner	encher	to fill up
	housewife	encontrar	to find, to meet
dono (m)	owner	encostar	to lean against
dormir	to sleep	enfim	at last
donde	from where	enganar-se	to be mistaken
(de + onde)	nom where	engarrafamento	
dor (f)	pain	(m)	VIIII Juni
download (m)	(to) download	engolir	to swallow
duplo	double	enjoado	sick
durante	during	enorme	huge
durar	to last	enquanto	while
dúvida (f)	doubt	no entanto	yet, however
dúzia (f)	dozen	então	then
(1)	dozen	entender	to understand
e	and	entrada (f)	entrance, entry,
é	he, she, it is,	(1)	doorway
C	you are	entrar	to come, to go in,
écran (m)	(Pt) screen		to enter
edifício (m)	building	entrar na Net	to access the Net
editoração	desktop publishing	entre	between, among
eletrônica (f)	desired passing	entrega (f)	delivery
ela	she, it	entretanto	meanwhile
ele	he, it	entrevista (f)	interview
eléctrico (m)	(Pt) tram	envergonhado	ashamed
elevador (m)	lift	equipe (f)	team
em	in, on, at	errado	wrong, mistaken
email (m)	e-mail	erro (m)	mistake
embarcar	to go on board,	escada (f)	staircase, step
	to embark	escanear	to scan
embora	although, though	esconder	to hide
empregado/a	employee, clerk;	escrever	to write
	(Pt) waiter,	escritório (m)	office
	waitress	esgotado	sold out
emprego (m)	job	esperar	to wait, to hope
empresa (f)	firm, enterprise	esporte (m)	sport
emprestar	to loan, to lend	esquecer	to forget
empurrar	to push	esquerda:	on the left of,
encaixe (m)	socket	-	to the left of
encanador (m)		esquerdo	left
, ,			
encantado	•	esquina (f)	corner
encantado	delighted, charmed	esquina (f) estação (f)	corner station, season

estacionar	to park	fechar	to close
Estados Unidos	-	feio	ugly
(mpl)	CS/1	feliz	happy
estar	to be	feriado (m)	holiday
este (m)	east	férias (fpl)	holidays
este/a	this	festa (f)	party
estes/estas	these	ficar	to stay,
estrada (f)	road	11041	to become,
estrada de ferro			to be
estudar	to study	ficha (f)	token, (index)
eu	I	(-)	card
evidente	evident	fila (f)	line, row; (Br)
evitar	to avoid,	()	queue
	to prevent	filho/a	son/daughter
explicar	to explain	filhos	children
exportação (f)	export(ing)	filmar	to film
exterior (m)	outside, exterior	filme (m)	film
extinguir	to put out (fire)	fim (m)	end
extrato (m)	extract	, ,	f) virtual flowers
extrato de	bank statement	folha (f)	sheet, leaf
conta		fome (f)	hunger
extrovertido	extrovert	fone (m)	receiver
			(telephone)
fábrica (f)	factory	fora	outside
faca (f)	knife	fornecer	to supply
face (f)	face	fósforos (mpl)	matches
fácil	easy	fraco	weak
fatura (f)	invoice, bill	freguês (m),	customer, client
falador	talkative	freguesa (f)	
falar	to talk, to speak	freio (m)	(Br) brake
faltar	to be lacking,	frente (f)	front
	to miss	em frente de	opposite
farmácia (f)	chemist's (shop)	fresco	cool
farol (m)	lighthouse,	frio	cold
	headlamp (car)	fronteira (f)	frontier, border
farto	fed up	fruta (f)	fruit
fatia (f)	slice	frutaria (f)	fruit shop
fato (m)	(Pt) suit	fumo (m)	smoke
favor (m)	favour	funcionário (m)	
faz favor	please		servant
fazer	to make, to do	fundido	fused
fechado	closed	fundo	deep

furo (m)	hole, puncture	grama (m)	gramme;
fusível (m)	fuse		(Br) grass
futebol (m)	football	grande	big, large
futuro (m)	future	grátis	free
		grato/a	grateful
gabinete (m)	office, study	grau (m)	degree, level
gama (f)	scale, range	greve (f)	strike
ganhar	to win, to earn,	gripe (f)	'flu
	to gain	grosso	thick, rough
garagem (f)	garage	grupo (m)	group
garçom (m)	(Br) waiter	guarda-chuva (1	
garfo (m)	fork	guardanapo (m	
gargalhada (f)	burst of laughter	guarda-roupa (1	
garganta (f)	throat	guardar	to keep, to watch
garoto (m)	boy, kid; (Pt)		over
	small white coffee	guitarra (f)	(Pt) guitar
garrafa (f)	bottle	há	there is, there are,
gasóleo (m)	(Pt) diesel oil		ago
gasolina (f)	petrol	habitação (f)	dwelling
gastar	to spend	haver	to have
gastos (mpl)	expenses, costs	hipoteca (f)	mortgage
gatuno (m)	thief	história (f)	story, history
gelado (m)	chilled	hoje	today
gelar	to freeze	homem (m)	man
gelo (m)	ice	hora (f)	hour, time
gente (f)	people	horário (m)	timetable
geral	general	hospedeira (f)	(Pt) air hostess
em geral	generally	hospital (m)	hospital
gerência (f)	management	hotel (m)	hotel
gerente (m/f)	manager	humor (m)	mood, humour
giro	turn; (Pt) cute,		
(m and adj)	pretty, terrific	ida (f)	departure, single
gol (m)	(Br) goal		(ticket)
golo (m)	(Pt) goal	ida e volta	return ticket
gordo	fat	idade (f)	age
gorjeta (f)	tip	igual	equal
gostar de	to like	imediatamente	immediately
gosto (m)	taste	impedido	(Pt) engaged
gota (f)	drop		(telephone)
graça (f)	charm, joke,	importação (f)	importing, import
	grace	importar	to import

impossível	impossible	junto (de)	beside
impressora (f)	printer	juros (mpl)	interest
incluir	to include	sem juros	interest-free
incomodar	to annoy,	justo	fair, just
	to bother		
indicativo (m)	(Pt) area code,	Iá	there
	international	lã (f)	wool
	code (telephone)	lado (m)	side
indigestão (f)	indigestion	ladrão (m)	thief
informática (f)	computing	lago (m)	lake
ingresso (m)	ticket	lâmpada (f)	light bulb
interessante	interesting	lançar	to throw
interior (m)	inside, interior	lanche (m)	snack
interromper	to interrupt	laptop (m)	laptop
intervalo (m)	interval	lar (f)	home, hearth
introduzir	to introduce	lareira (f)	fireplace, fireside
inútil	useless	largo	wide, broad,
inverno (m)	winter		square
investimento (n	n) investment	lavar	to wash
ir	to go	lavar-se	to wash oneself
ir-se embora	to go away	legumes (mpl)	vegetables
isqueiro (m)	lighter	lembrar	to remind
isso	that, that thing	lembrar-se de	to remember
por isso	therefore	lento	slow
isto	this, this thing	ler	to read
		levantar	to lift, to raise
já	already, now,	levantar-se	to get up
	right now	levar	to take, to carry
jamais	never	leve	light, slight
janela (f)	window	lhe	to him, to her,
jantar (m)	dinner		to you
jantar	to dine	lhes	to them,
jardim (m)	garden		to you (pl)
jeito (m)	knack, skill	libra (f)	pound (sterling)
dar jeito	to be convenient	licença (f)	permission
joelho (m)	knee	com licença	excuse me
jogging (m)	jogging	ligação (f)	connection
fazer jogging	to jog	ligar	to tie, to connect
jogo (m)	game	limpar	to clean
jornal (m)	newspaper	limpo	clean
jovem	youth, young	linha (f)	line, thread,
(m and adj)			cable

lista (f)	directory	meio-quilo	half a kilo
	(telephone),	meio-ambiente	environment
	list	(m)	
livraria (f)	bookshop	melhor	better
livro (m)	book	menino/a	boy/girl
locutor (m)	radio announcer	menor	smaller, smallest,
logo	then, soon, later,		minor
	right away	mercearia (f)	grocer's (shop)
longe	far, far away	mesa (f)	table
loteria (f)	lottery	mesmo	same
louça (f)	crockery	metade (f)	half, middle
lua (f)	moon	metrô (m)	underground
lugar (m)	place, space	meu/minha	my, mine
luxo (m)	luxury	mídia (f)	media
luz (f)	light	mim	me
ma (me +a)	it to me	minha	my, mine
má (adj f)	bad, evil	(adj & pron f)
macio	soft, smooth	minuto (m)	minute
maço (m)	packet (cigarettes)	mo (me +o)	it to me
mãe (f)	mother	moçambicano	Mozambican
magro	thin	moça (f)	girl
maior	bigger	moda (f)	fashion
maioria (f)	majority	modem (m)	modem
mais	more	modo (m)	way, manner
mala (f)	suitcase	montra (f)	(Pt) shop window
mamãe (f)	(Br) mum	morar	to stay (place),
mandar	to send		to reside
maneira (f)	way, manner	mos (me + os)	them to me
manhã (f)	morning	mostrar	to show
manter	to maintain	muito	a lot of, many;
mapa (m)	map, chart	4.0	very
mar (m)	sea	mulher (f)	woman, wife
marca (f)	brand, make	música (f)	music
marisco (m)	shellfish		
mas (me + as)		na (em +a)	in the, on the
mau/má	bad, evil	nada	nothing
medicamento	medicine	nadar	to swim
(m)		não	no, not
médico (m)	doctor	nas (em + as)	at the (fpl)
medida (f)	size, measurement	nascer	to be born
medir	to measure	Natal (m)	Christmas
meio (m)	half	navegador (m)	browser

navegar na Net	to surf the Net	onde	where
necessário	necessary	ônibus (m)	(Br) bus
negócio (m)	business,	ontem	yesterday
	transaction	óptimo	(Pt) great
nem	neither, nor	orçamento (m)	budget
nenhum/a	none, not one/any	ordenado	salary, in order
nesse/a	in that	ordenar	to order
(em + esse)		organização (f)	organization
nesses/as	in those	osso (m)	bone
(em + esses/as	s)	OTAN	NATO
neste/a	in this	ótimo	(Br) great
(em + este)		ou	or
nestes/as	in these	outono (m)	autumn
(em + estes/as	s)	outro	another
ninguém	nobody	outrora	formerly, a long
no (em + o)	in the, on the		time ago
norte (m)	north	ouvir	to hear
nos¹	us, to us		
nos ² (em + os)	in the/at the	pá (f)	shovel; (Pt) pal;
(mpl)			mate
nós	we	pacote (m)	parcel
notícia (f)	piece of news	pagar	to pay
noticiário (m)	radio news	página da	Web page
notícias	news	Web (f)	
novela (f)	soap opera	pai (m)	father
novo	new, young	pais	parents
nublado	cloudy	palco (m)	stage
nunca	never	pano (m)	cloth
nuvem (f)	cloud	papai (m)	(Br) dad
		par (m)	pair
obra/s (f)	work(s), repairs	para	for, towards
obrigação (f)	obligation	parar	to stop
obrigado/a	thank you,	partir	to leave
	obliged	Páscoa (f)	Easter
ocasião (f)	occasion,	passar	to pass, to spend
	opportunity		(time); to iron
óculos (mpl)	glasses	passatempo (m)	pastime, hobby
ocupado	engaged	passear	to walk
	(telephone)	pasta (f)	briefcase
oeste (m)	west	pasta de dentes	-
oferecer	to offer	pastelaria (f)	pastry shop/snack
olhar	to look		bar

patrão (m)	boss, landlord	precisar de	to need
patroa (f)	landlady	preço (m)	price
PC (m)	PC (personal	prédio (m)	building
	computer)	prestar	to be of use
peça (f)	piece, part, play	pretender	to intend
	(theatre)	primavera (f)	spring
pedir	to ask for	procurar	to look for
pegar	to catch	proibido	forbidden
pele (f)	skin	provar	to taste, to try on
pelo/a	for, through,		(clothes)
(por + o/a)	by the	provedor de	access provider
pena (f)	suffering, pity	acesso (m)	
que pena!	what a shame!	próximo	near, close, next
pensar	to think	puxar	to pull
pequeno-	(Pt) breakfast		
almoço (m)		quadro (m)	picture, painting
perguntar	to ask	qual (pl quais)	which, who
perto	nearby	qualquer	any, anyone
péssimo	awful	(pl quaisquer)	
pior	worse	quantia (f)	sum, amount
o pior	the worst	quantidade (f)	quantity
pista (f)	track, trail	quanto	how much,
platéia (f)	stalls (theatre)		all that
pneu (m)	tyre	quase	almost
pó (m)	powder	que	who, that,
pois bem	well then, so		which
política (f)	politics	que azar!	that's unfortunate!
pontapé (m)	kick	quê!?	what!?
ponte (f)	bridge	queixa (f)	complaint
por	for	queixar	to complain
por favor	please	quem	who (m)
pôr	to put	quente	warm
porcaria (f)	(Pt) rubbish, mess	querer	to want
porque	because	questão (f)	question
por que?	why?	quilo (m)	kilo
porta (f)	door	quilômetro (m)	
portanto	therefore	quinze dias (m)	-
possível	possible	quotidiano	everyday
pouco	little, few		
praça (f)	square, market	rádio (m)	radio, radio
prato (m)	plate, dish		station
prazer (m)	pleasure	rapaz (m)	boy

rapidez (f)	speed	rico	mi ala
raramente	seldom	rir	rich
raso	flat, low	rodovia (f)	to laugh
razão (f)	reason	rodoviária (f)	(Br) motorway
realmente	really, actually	romper	to break
recado (m)	message	rossio (m)	
recear	to fear	roto	large square torn, burst
receita (f)	recipe,	roupa (f)	clothes
recena (1)	prescription,	rua (f)	street
	income	ruído (m)	noise
recibo (m)	receipt	ruido (III)	Hoise
recolher	to collect	sã (adj f)	healthy, sound
reconhecer	to recognize	sa (adj 1)	to know (facts)
	fun, recreation	saber (m)	taste, flavour
recreação (f)	to refuse	•	to take out
recusar rede		sacar saca-rolhas (m)	
	net, goal		
rede (f)	Net (Internet)	saco (m)	bag
refeição (f)	meal	saia (f)	skirt
regressar	to come, to go	saída (f)	exit
()	back	sair	to go out
regresso (m)	return	sal (m)	salt
relógio (m)	clock, watch	sala de chat (f)	· ·
relogio (m) remédio (m)	remedy;		Internet)
remédio (m)	remedy; medicine	saltar	Internet) to jump
remédio (m)	remedy;	saltar sanduíche (m)	Internet) to jump sandwich
remédio (m) remoto renda (f)	remedy; medicine remote income	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade	remedy; medicine remote	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop
remédio (m) remoto renda (f)	remedy; medicine remote income	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade	remedy; medicine remote income	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter)
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m)	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m)	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resfriado (m)	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide respect	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar sede (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry thirst
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resfriado (m) resolver	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resfriado (m) resolver respeito (m)	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide respect	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar sede (f) secretária (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry thirst secretary, writing desk
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resfriado (m) resolver respeito (m) a/com	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide respect	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar sede (f) secretária (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry thirst secretary, writing desk following
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resfriado (m) resolver respeito (m) a/com respeito de	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide respect with regard to	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar sede (f) secretária (f) seguido segunda-mão	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry thirst secretary, writing desk following second hand
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resfriado (m) resolver respeito (m) a/com respeito de respirar	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide respect with regard to to breathe	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar sede (f) secretária (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry thirst secretary, writing desk following second hand come off it!
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resolver respeito (m) a/com respeito de respirar responder	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide respect with regard to to breathe to reply	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar sede (f) secretária (f) seguido segunda-mão sem essa! semana (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry thirst secretary, writing desk following second hand come off it! week
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resfriado (m) resolver respeito (m) a/com respeito de respirar responder ressaca (f)	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide respect with regard to to breathe to reply hangover	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar sede (f) secretária (f) seguido segunda-mão sem essa! semana (f) semáforos (mpl)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry thirst secretary, writing desk following second hand come off it! week traffic lights
remédio (m) remoto renda (f) rentabilidade (f) repousar reprovar rés-do-chão (m) resfriado (m) resolver respeito (m) a/com respeito de respirar responder ressaca (f) resto (m)	remedy; medicine remote income profitability to rest to fail (Pt) ground floor cold to solve, to decide respect with regard to to breathe to reply hangover rest	saltar sanduíche (m) são/sã sapataria (f) saudade (f) saudades saudável scanner (m) se secar sede (f) secretária (f) seguido segunda-mão sem essa! semana (f)	Internet) to jump sandwich healthy, sound shoe shop longing regards (letter) healthy scanner if, whether to dry thirst secretary, writing desk following second hand come off it! week

	always still vet	talho (m)	(Pt) butcher's
sempre senão	always, still, yet if not, otherwise	tamo (m)	(shop)
sentar-se	to sit down	talvez	perhaps
sentir-se	to feel	tamanho (m)	size
Sentii-Se	(happy, etc.)	tamamo (m)	too, also
congrar	to separate	tanto	so much, many
separar ser	to be	tão	so mach, many
serra (f)	mountain range/	tarde (f)	afternoon
seria (1)	saw	tarefa (f)	job, task
seu/sua	his, her(s), your(s),	tas (te + as)	them to you (s)
	its, their(s)	teclado (m)	keyboard
SIDA (f)	AIDS	tecnologia de	information
simpático	kind, nice	informação (f)	technology
sindicato (m)	trade union	tela (f)	(Br) screen
site (m)	site (on Internet)	telemóvel (m)	(Pt) mobile
só	alone		phone
sob	under	telenovela (f)	soap opera
sobre	on, above,	televisão (f)	television
	over	tempo (m)	time, weather
sobretudo	above all	tencionar	to intend
socorrer	to help	ter	to have
sofrer	to suffer	terminar	to finish
sol (m)	sun	terno (m)	(Br) suit
solteiro	single	terra (f)	earth
sono (m)	sleep	térreo (m)	ground floor
sorte (f)	luck, chance	to $(te + o)$	it to you (s)
sorvete (m)	ice-cream	toalete (m)	toilet
sozinho	by oneself, alone	toalha (f)	towel
sua	his, her(s), your(s),	tocar	to play (music),
(adj & pron f)	its, their(s)		to ring
subir	to go up		(telephone),
suco (m)	juice		to touch
suéter (m)	(Br) sweater	todavia	still, however
sujo	dirty	todo	all, every
sul (m)	south	tomada (f)	plug (electrical)
suor (m)	sweat	tomara!	let's hope!
supor	to suppose	torneira (f)	tap
		tos (te + os)	them to you (s)
ta (te + a)	it to you (s)	transeunte (m)	passer-by
tabacaria (f)	tobacconist's (shop)	transitar	to go, to pass through
tal	(shop)	trânsito (m)	traffic
****	Sucii	transito (III)	tiuille

tratar	to deal with,	vende-se	for sale
	to treat	ver	to see
travão (m)	(Pt) brake	verão (m)	summer
trazer	to bring	verdade (f)	truth
trem (m)	(Br) train	vergonha (f)	shame
triste	sad	verificar	to check
trocar	to exchange	vestido (m)	dress
troco (m)	change (money)	vestir	to dress
tropeçar	to trip	vestir-se	to get dressed
tudo	all, everything	vez (f)	time, turn
turismo (m)	tourism	violão (m)	guitar
()		vir	to come
ufa!	phew!	virar	to turn
uísque (m)	whisky	vitrine/vitrina	(Br) shop
ultimamente	lately	(f)	window
um/uma	a, an, one	viva!	hooray!
unir	to join	viver	to live
universidade (•	você (pl vocês)	you
upload	to upload	volta (f)	return, turn, curve
urgente	urgent	voltar	to come back
usado	used, worn	vontade (f)	will
usar	to use	vôo (m)	flight
usuário da	Internet user	voz (f)	voice
Internet (m)			
útil	useful	Web (f)	Web (on Internet)
vaga (f)	wave, vacancy	xadrez (m)	chess
vago	vacant, vague	xale (m)	shawl
valer	to be worth	xícara (f)	(Br) cup
válido	valid	xixi (m): fazer	to go to the toilet
valor (m)	value, worth	xixi	
vantagem (f)	advantage		
variado	varied	zanga (f)	anger
vários	several	zangar	to annoy
veja bem	now then	zangar-se	to get
velho	old		annoyed
vencer	to win	zero (m)	nothing, zero
venda (f)	sale	zona (f)	zone, area
vender	to sell		

English-Portuguese glossary

Portuguese (Pt) words are distinguished from Brazilian (Br) words where necessary.

a, an	um, uma	any	qualquer, (pl)
able	capaz		quaisquer
to be able (to)	poder	anybody/	qualquer pessoa
access provider	Provedor de	anyone	
	acesso (m)	anything	algo, alguma
address	endereço (m) (Br);		coisa
	morada (f) (Pt)	arrival	chegada (f)
(to) advertise	pôr um anúncio	(to arrive)	chegar
advertisement	anúncio (m)	as	como, tão
after/afterwards	depois de	as much/	tanto/a/os/as
afternoon	tarde (f)	as many	
against	contra	as soon as	tão depressa
(to) agree	concordar, estar	possible	quanto possível
	de acordo	(to) ask	perguntar
airport	aeroporto (m)	(to) ask for	pedir
all	todo/a/os/as	at	em, a
(to) allow	permitir, deixar	at last	finalmente
alone	só, sózinho	at least	pelo menos
almost	quase	at once	imediatamente,
already	já		já
also	também	attachment	Attach;
always	sempre	(in e-mail)	attachment (m)
among	entre	away	fora
and	e	far away	muito longe
angry	zangado	awful	horrível, péssimo
(to get	zangar-se		
become)		bad	mau/má
angry		badly	mal

bag	saco (m), bolsa (f)	breakfast	café (m) da manhã (Br);
bank	banco (m)		pequeno-almoço
bathroom	banheiro (m) (Br);		(m) (Pt)
	casa/sala (f)	(to) bring	trazer
	de banho (Pt)	browser	Navegador (m)
(to) be	ser, estar	(to) build	construir,
beach	praia (f)	,	estatura (f)
(to) bear	aguentar,	building	edifício (m)
, ,	suportar	bus	ônibus (m)
bed	cama (f)		(Br); autocarro
bedroom	quarto (m)		(m) (Pt)
	de dormir,	business	negócio (m),
	quarto de		negócios (mpl)
	cama	but	mas
beer	cerveja (f)	(to) buy	comprar
before	antes de	by	por, através
(to) begin	começar,		
	principiar	(to) call	chamar
behind	atrás de	to be called	chamar-se
(to) believe	acreditar, crer	can (to be able)	poder
beside	ao lado de	car	automóvel (m),
besides	além de		carro (m)
better	melhor	care	cuidado (m)
between	entre	(to) carry	levar, transportar
big	grande	cash-point	caixa automática
bill	conta		(f) (Br); terminal
birthday	dia de anos (m),		caixa (m) (Pt)
	(Pt) aniversário	cassette	cassete (m)
	(m)	certainly	com certeza,
to have a	fazer anos,		certamente
birthday	aniversário	chance	oportunidade (f)
black	preto, negro	(by) chance	por acaso
boarding/guest	pensão (f)	(to) change	mudar, mudança
house			(f); trocar
both	ambos		to (ex)change
bottle	garrafa (f)		(money/things),
brandy	conhaque (m)		troco (m)
bread	pão (m)		change (money)
(to) break	quebrar, partir	chat room (on	Sala de chat (f)
breakdown	avaria (f)	Internet)	
(of car)		cheap	barato

chemist's (shop) farmácia (f)	(to) dine	jantar
(traveller's)	cheque	dinner	jantar (m)
cheque	(de viagem) (m)	disk	disquete (m)
child	criança (f)	(floppy disk)	
choice	escolha (f)	(to) do	fazer
(to) choose	escolher	doctor	médico/a; doutor/a
cigarettes	cigarros (mpl)		(academic
cigars	charutos (mpl)		qualification)
city	cidade (f)	(to) download	Download (m)
(to) climb	subir, trepar	(to) dress	vestir-se, vestido
cloudy	nublado		(m)
coach	ônibus (m)	(to) drink	beber, bebida (f)
coat	paletó (m) (Br);	driver	motorista (m/f)
	casaco (m) (Pt)	driver's licence	carteira de
coffee	café (m)		motorista (f)
coin	moeda (f)		(Br); carta de
cold	frio (m)		condução (f) (Pt)
(to) come	vir		
to come in	entrar	each	cada
to come back	voltar	each one	cada qual
(to) complain	queixar-se	each other	um ao outro
complaint	queixa (f)	early	cedo
computer	computador (m)	easily	facilmente
computing	Informática (f)	east	este (m)
(to) continue	continuar	easy	fácil
corner	esquina (f)	(to) eat	comer
(to) cost	custar, custo (m)	either	ou
(to) count	contar	e-mail	email (m)
country	país (m)	emergency	emergência (f)
(to) cover	cobrir	empty	vazio
(to) cross	atravessar	English	inglês
customer	cliente (m/f),	(to) enjoy	divertir-se, gozar
	freguês/guesa	enough	bastante
customs	alfândega (f)	(to) enter	entrar
		environment	meio-ambiente
dark	escuro		(m)
darkness	escuridão (f)	equally	igualmente
day	dia (m)	evening	tarde (f), noite (f)
delay	atraso (m)	every	cada
dentist	dentista (m/f)	everybody	todo o mundo (m)
departures	partidas (fpl)		(Br); toda a
difficult	difícil		gente (f) (Pt)
			9

everyday	todos os dias	for	por, para
everything	tudo	foreign(er)	estrangeiro (m)
except	exceto	(to) forget	esquecer,
excuse me	faz favor, com		esquecer-se de
	licença, desculpe	fortnight	quinze dias (mpl),
exhibition	exposição (f)		quinzena (f)
(to) expect	esperar, contar	fortunately	felizmente
	com	friend	amigo (m)
expenses	despesas (fpl)	from	de
(to) explain	explicar	full	cheio
fabric	tecido (m),	gate (airport)	portão (m) de
	pano (m)		embarque
face value	valor nominal (m)	gentleman	senhor (m),
(to) facilitate	facilitar		cavalheiro (m)
factory	fábrica (f)	(to) get	arranjar, obter
(to) fall	cair	(to) get up	levantar-se
far	longe, distante	(to) give	dar
fast	adiantado,	glasses	óculos (mpl)
	depressa	(to) go	ir
fat	gordo	(to) go home	ir para casa
favour	favor (m)	good	bom/boa
fax	fax (m)	goodbye	adeus
(to) fear	recear, temer, ter	goods	gêneros (mpl)
	medo, medo (m)	great	grande
(to) feel	sentir, sentir-se	great!	ótimo!
(to) fetch	buscar, ir buscar	(to) grow	crescer
few	alguns/algumas/	(to) guess	adivinhar, supor
	uns/umas/		
	poucos/as	hair	cabelo (m)
(to) fill	encher	half	meio, metade (f)
(to) find	achar	(to) happen	acontecer
(to) finish	acabar, terminar	hard disc	Disco Rígido (m)
fish	peixe (m)	(to) have	ter
flat ¹	raso	(to) hear	ouvir
flat ²	apartamento (m)	heat	calor (m)
flavour	sabor (m)	heavy	pesado
flight	vôo (m)	height	altura (f)
floor	chão (m), andar	(to) help	ajudar, ajuda (f)
	(m)	here	aqui, cá
fog	nevoeiro (m)	hi!	oi! (Br); olá (Pt)
(to) follow	seguir	high	alto

hire	aluguel (m) (Br); aluguer (m)	juice	suco (m) (Br); sumo (m) (Pt)
	(Pt)	(to be) keen on	gostar de (some-
holiday	feriado (m)	(to be) keen on	thing algo,
holidays	férias (fpl)		somebody
home	casa (f), lar (m)		alguém), ter
(to) hope	esperar, esperança		vontade de
(10) 110 P	(f)	(to) keep	guardar
hot	quente	key	chave (f)
hour	hora (f)	kind	amável
house	casa (f)	(to) know	conhecer
how	como	(10)	(people/places),
however	contudo		saber (facts, etc.)
hunger	fome (f)	label	etiqueta (f), marca
hurry	pressa (f)		(f)
(to) hurt	magoar, ferir	(to) lack	faltar, falta (f)
` '	8 /	(to) land	aterrizar
ice	gelo (m)	laptop	Laptop (m)
identical	idêntico	large	grande
if	se	last	último
ill	doente	late	tarde, atrasado
immediately	imediatamente	(to) laugh	rir
important	importante	law	lei (f), direito (m)
impossible	impossível	(to) learn	aprender
in	em	(to) leave	partir, sair
(to) increase	aumentar	less	menos
information	informação (f)	(to) let	deixar, permitir;
information	Tecnologia de	、 /	alugar
technology	informação (f)		(house/car)
Internet user	usuário da	letter	carta (f)
	Internet (m)	(to) lie down	deitar-se
(to) introduce	apresentar	life	vida (f)
(to) invite	convidar	(to) lift	levantar, ascensor
invoice	fatura (f)	` /	(m), elevador
	· /		(m)
jack (tool)	macaco (m)	to give a lift	dar uma carona
to jack up	levantar com o	(in a vehicle)	(Br); dar uma
, ,	macaco	,	boleia (Pt)
jam	geléia (f)	(to) light	acender, luz (f)
janitor	porteiro (m)	(to) like	gostar de
job	emprego (m)	(to) listen	ouvir, escutar
journey	viagem (f)	little	pequeno, pouco

longcompridocomputing)(to) long forter saudades de(to) movemexer-se, mover;longingsaudades (fpl)mudar de(to) lookolhar(house)(to) look forprocurar, buscarmuchmuito	
(to) look for procurar, buscar much muito	
(to) look for products, sustain	
(to) lose perder my o meu/a minha	
loud alto	
low baixo name nome (m)	
luck sorte (f) nationality nacionalidade (f)	
luggage bagagem (f), near perto de	
malas (fpl) nearly quase	
necessary necessário	
magazine revista (f) (to) need precisar de	
mail correio (m) neither nem	
(to) make fazer Net (Internet) Rede (f)	
man homem (m) never nunca, jamais	
manager gerente (m/f) new novo	
many muitos/as news notícias (fpl)	
market mercado (m), newspaper jornal (m)	
praça (f) next próximo	
meat carne (f) nice simpático	
(to) meet encontrar night noite (f)	
meeting encontro (m), no, not não	
reunião (f) nobody ninguém	
message recado (m), noise barulho (m)	
mensagem (f) nor nem	
midday/ meio-dia/meia- north norte (m)	
midnight noite nothing nada	
mistake erro (m), engano now agora	
(m)	
mobile phone Cellular (m) oath juramento (m)	
(Pt) mobile telemóvel (m) (to) obey obedecer, cumpri	ir
phone of de	
modem Modem (m) office escritório (m),	
money dinheiro (m) gabinete (m)	
month mês (m), meses often muitas vezes	
(mpl) on em, em cima de, more mais sobre	
10 (0) HM0 V07	
morning manhā (t) once unta vez most a maior only só, apenas	
parte de (to) open abrir	

opinion opportunity opposite	opinião (f) oportunidade (f) em frente de	quickly quiet	depressa calado
or (to) order	ou encomendar	race	<pre>corrida (f) (competition);</pre>
other	outro		raça (f) (people
(to) ought to	dever		of same group)
our, ours	nosso/a/os/as	railway	estrada (f) de
out	fora		ferro (Br);
over there	além, acolá		caminho (m) de
			ferro (Pt)
parcel	pacote (m),	rare	raro, mal passado
	embrulho (m)		(cooked)
park	parque (m)	(to) read	ler
partner	sócio (m)	ready	pronto
(to) pay	pagar	(to) receive	receber
PC (personal	PC (m)	(to) refuse	recusar
computer)	. (6)	regards	cumprimentos
pen	caneta (f)		(mpl)
pencil	lápis (m)	(to) remain	ficar
people	gente (f), pessoas	(to) remember	lembrar-se de
	(fpl)	(to) repair	consertar, conserto
perhaps	talvez		(m)
(to) pick up	apanhar	(to) rest	descansar
pity	pena (f), lástima (f)	rest	resto (m) (remain-
(to) place	pôr, colocar		der); descanso
(to) play	jogar (sport);		(m)
	brincar (joke);	(to) return	voltar, regressar
	tocar (music)	right	direito (direction);
please!	por/faz favor!		certo (correct)
(to) please	agradar	(to) ring	tocar
(to) prefer	preferir	room	quarto (m)
printer	Impressora (f)	(to) run	correr
puncture	furo (m)		
purchase	compra (f)	safe	fora de perigo,
(to) put	pôr, meter		seguro; cofre (m) (for money)
quaint	curioso, pitoresco	salary	salário (m),
quality	qualidade (f)		ordenado (m)
quantity	quantidade (f)	salesman	vendedor (m)
question	pergunta (f),	salt	sal (m)
	questão (f)	same	mesmo

sample	amostra (f)	street	rua (f)
(to) say	dizer	strike	greve (f)
scanner	Scanner (m)	strong	forte
(on) schedule	à tabela,	suit	terno (m) (Br);
	a tempo, no		fato (m) (Pt)
	horário	suitcase	mala (f)
sea	mar (m)	sun	sol (m)
(to) see	ver	sunglasses	óculos (mpl)
(to) seem	parecer		de sol
(to) send	mandar, enviar	sunshine	sol (m)
several	vários	(to) supply	fornecer
shop	loja (f)	(to be) sure	ter a certeza
short	curto	(to) switch off	desligar
(to) shut	fechar, encerrar	(to) switch on	ligar
sir	senhor		
(to) sit down	sentar-se	table	mesa (f)
site (on	Site (m)	(to) take	tomar, pegar (em)
Internet)		(to) take off	decolar (plane),
size	tamanho (m)		despir-se
(to) sleep	dormir		(clothes)
slow	lento, devagar	tall	alto
small	pequeno	tea	chá (m)
(to) smoke	fumar	telephone call	telefonema (m),
so	assim, portanto		chamada (f)
some	algum/a	(to) tell	dizer, contar
something	alguma coisa	temperature	temperatura (f)
sometimes	às vezes	than	que, do que
soon	em breve	(to) thank	agradecer
as soon as	logo que, assim	thank you	obrigado
	que	the	o/a
(to be) sorry	ter pena	then	então
sorry!	desculpe!	there	ali, lá, aí
south	sul (m)	there is/are	há
(to) speak	falar	thin	magro
speaker	locutor (a)	thing	coisa (f)
(to) spend	gastar	(to) think	pensar, achar
sport	esporte (m) (Br);	thirst	sede (f)
•	desporto (m) (Pt)	this/these/	este/a/es/as,
stamp	selo (m)	those	esse/a/es/as,
station	estação (f)		aquele/a/es/as
(to) stay	ficar	(to) throw	atirar
still	ainda	thunder	trovão (m)

thus	assim	us	nos
ticket	bilhete (m)	useful	útil
time	tempo (m), hora		
	(f)	vacancy	vaga (f), quarto
this time	esta vez		livre (m) (room)
timetable	horário (m)	value	valor (m)
tired	cansado	variety	variedade (f)
to	a, para	very	muito
to access the	Entrar na Net	virtual flowers	Flores virtuais (f)
Net		visit	visita (f)
tobacconist	tabacaria (f)		
today	hoje	wage	salário (m),
toilet	toalete (m)		ordenado (m)
too	também	(to) wait	esperar
too much	demasiado,	waiter	garçom (m),
demais			empregado (m)
to scan	Escanear	(to) walk	andar (a pé),
to surf the Net	Navegar na Net		caminhar
(to) touch	tocar	(to) wake	despertar, acordar
to upload	upload	(to) want	querer, desejar
town	cidade (f)	(to) wash	lavar(-se)
traffic	trânsito (m)	we	nós
traffic jam	engarrafamento	weather	tempo (m)
	(m)	Web (on	Web (f)
train	trem (m) (Br);	Internet)	
	comboio (m)	Web page	Página da Web
(Pt)		(f)	
(to) travel	viajar	well	bem
(to) trip	tropeçar, viagem	west	oeste (m)
	(f), giro (m)	what?	(o) quê?
true	verdadeiro	when	quando
(to) try	tentar, provar	where	onde
(to) turn	virar, voltar	which	qual
		who	quem
ugly	feio	whole	todo, inteiro
unable	incapaz	whose	de quem
underneath	debaixo de, sob	why?	por que?
(to) understand	-	wife	$\textbf{mulher}\ (f),\ \textbf{esposa}$
unfortunately	infelizmente		(f)
unless	a não ser que	(to) win	ganhar
until	até	wine	vinho (m)
upstairs	lá em cima	with	com

without woman (to) work	sem mulher (f) trabalhar, trabalho	you	tu, você, o/a senhor/a(s); vós, vocês, os/as senhores/as (pl)
worried worse worth	(m) preocupado pior valor (m)	your(s) yourself	teu/tua seu/sua tu mesmo, você mesmo
(to) write	escrever	young youth	jovem, novo juventude (f)
x-ray	raio-x (m), radiografia (f)	youth hostel	pousada/albergaria (f) da juventude
year	ano (m)	zero	zero (m)
yes yesterday yet	sim ontem ainda, porém	zip	fecho-ecler (m) (Br); fecho-éclair (m) (Pt)

Topic index

The numbers refer to the lessons in the book.

accommodation 4, 10 addresses 12 advertisements 2, 10 age 3, 11 ailments 7 airport 6 appearance 2, 11 appointments 12 asking for something 1, 3–9, 12 bank 8

bank 8
beverages 1, 3
bill 1, 3, 5
birthday 3
body 7
booking 4
breakdown 4, 6, 10
business terms 12
bus station 6

café 1
camping 9
car (problems) 6
cash 3, 8
cash-point card 8
changing money 8
chemist 7
cheque 5, 8
clothes 5
colours 5
comparisons 5

computers 12

conversation fillers 10, 11 correspondence 12 crossword 8 currency 3, 8 curriculum vitae 2

customs 6

daily routine 7 date of birth 3 dates 3 days 2 dentist 7

describing yourself 2, 11 directions 4

directions 4

dislikes/likes 1, 2, 5, 9, 11

drinks 1, 3, 11 driving 6

eating out 1, 3

electrical equipment 10, 12

emergencies 7, 10 employment 2, 11

e-mail 13

entertainment 9, 11 excusing yourself 4 expressing yourself 2, 9

family 3 farewells 1, 2 fax 12 food 1, 3 opinions 2, 9, 10, 11 furniture 10 ordering 1, 3 future plans 4, 9, 11

past experiences 11 garage 6 pastimes 2, 7, 9, 11 getting attention 1, 4 paying 3, 4, 5 personality 2, 11

physical appearance 2, 11 th 7 post office 8

health 7 post office 8 hiring car 6 postcard 12 hobbies 2, 7, 9, 11 problems in the home 10 holidays 9, 11 proverbs 8

hospital 7

hotel 4

illness 7 reading (hints) 11
Internet 13 relationships 3, 4
interrupting 4 reservations (room

introductions 1, 2, 11

invitations 11

reservations (rooms, seats) 4

restaurant 3 revision 13

salutations 12

small talk 10, 11

speed limits 6

sweepstakes 10

telephoning 8, 12

television 2

time 2, 4

seasons 9

signs 5, 6

shops 5

sizes 5

sports 7

quantities 5, 6

leisure activities 2, 7, 11

letters 12

jobs 2, 11

likes/dislikes 1, 2, 5, 9, 11

materials 5 meals 3

measurements 5

meetings (business, other) 1, 3, 11,

meetings (business, other) 1, 3, 11

memo 12 menu 1, 3

mobile phone (use) 13

money 8 months 3, 9

nationalities 1, 3, 11

newspapers 2, 10 numbers 2, 3, 7 office equipment 12 timetable (bus) 6 transport (air, bus, other) 6 travel 4, 6, 9, 10

tickets (bus, cinema, theatre) 6, 9

travel 4, 6, 9, 10 traveller's cheques 8

weather 9 weights 5

Grammatical index

The numbers refer to the lessons in the book.

a 1, 2, 4-6 date 3 adjectives 1, 2, 3, 8 days of week 2 adverbs 2, 7 de 1, 2, 4-6 age 3, 11 demonstratives 5 ago 3 diminutives 9 aí 5 em 2, 4, 5 alguém 5 -er verbs 2, 6 algum 5 estar, ser 1, 2, 9 ali 5 everything 5 all 5 alphabet (See chapter A guide to fazer 3.9 pronunciation) ficar 4.8 andar 11 for 3, 4, 6 any 5 future indicative tense 4, 6 aqui 5 future perfect tense 6 aquilo, isso 5 future tense (using ir + infinitive) -ar verbs 2, 6 4, 6 articles 1, 2, 4 augmentatives 9 gender 1, 2 gerund 8 bem 5, 10 gostar de 2 commands 4 há 3, 4 comparatives 5 haver 3 conditional perfect tense 7 conditional tense 5, 7 imperative 4 conhecer 4 imperfect indicative tense 7 contractions 1, 2, 4, 5 in 2, 4, 5 costumar 7 indicative tense 1, 3

plurals 1, 2, 8 infinitive 2, 11 poder 5 -ing 8, 11 por 6 interrogatives 1, 3 possessive adjectives/pronouns 3 ir + infinitive 4, 6 pouco 2, 5 -ir verbs 2, 3, 6 prefixes 11 irregular verbs 1, 3 (see also verb prepositions 4, 7 tables) present continuous tense 8 isso, aquilo 5 present indicative tense 1-3 present subjunctive tense 7 lá 5 preterite tense 3 leave: to leave 10 pronouns 1, 3, 5-8 little 2 pronunciation 1 (see chapter A guide to pronunciation) many 2 me. mim 1. 3. 7 que, qual 3, 5 miss: to miss 6 questions 1-3, 5, 7 morar versus viver 10 muito 2 radical-changing verbs see chapter myself 7 Reference grammar reflexive pronouns 7 nada 5, 6, 9 reflexive verbs 7 negatives 1, 2, 5 regular verbs 1, 3 nenhum 5 relatives 3 ninguém 5 no one 5 saber 4 none 5 ser 1, 2, 9 nothing 5, 6, 9 some 5 nouns 1, 8 numbers (cardinal, ordinal) 2, 3, 7 someone 5 subject pronouns 1, 7 subjunctive: present 9; past 10; o 1, 2, 4-6 future 11, pluperfect 10; object pronouns (direct, indirect) 7, 8 perfect 9 of/from 1, 2, 4-6 subordinate clauses 9 orthography-changing verbs 11 suffixes 11 superlatives 5 para 3, 4, 6 participle (present) see gerund ter 3. 4 passive voice 9 time 2 past participle 6 to (a, para) 3, 4, 6 perfect tense 8 to be: ser versus estar 2 personal infinitive 11 todo, tudo 5 pluperfect indicative tense 8

um, uma 1, 5

weather 9

word order 2, 3, 7

ver 5

verb tables (see chapter Reference grammar)

yes (reiterating the verb) 1 you 1, 4

viver versus morar 10

PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL

The second edition of the popular COLLOQUIAL PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL is easy to use and completely up to date!

Specially written by experienced teachers for self-study and class use, the course offers you a step-by-step approach to written and spoken Portuguese of Brazil. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

What makes COLLOQUIAL PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL your best choice in personal language learning?

- Emphasis on conversational language with clear pronunciation guidance
- Grammar section for easy reference
- Comprehensive vocabulary lists (Portuguese–English and English–Portuguese)
- Stimulating exercises with lively illustrations

By the end of this rewarding course you will be able to communicate confidently and effectively in the Portuguese of Brazil in a broad range of everyday situations.

Audio material is available on two 60-minute cassettes or CDs to accompany COLLOQUIAL PORTUGUESE OF BRAZIL. Recorded by native speakers, these complement the book, helping you with pronunciation and listening skills.

Cover photograph: Sugar Loaf Mountain and Botafogo Bay, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil © Tony Morrison/South American Pictures

11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE 29 West 35th Street, New York NY 10001

www.routledge.com

Printed in Great Britain



